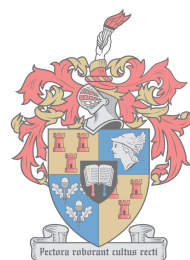


**Investigating the parts to understand the whole:  
Contribution of phenolic compounds to the desired  
estrogenic activity of SM6Met fractions from *Cyclopia  
subternata***

by  
Herzelle Claassen



*Thesis presented in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree  
of Master of Science in the Faculty of Sciences at Stellenbosch University*

UNIVERSITEIT  
STELLENBOSCH  
UNIVERSITY

100  
1918 · 2018

Supervisor: Prof. Ann Louw  
Co-supervisor: Dr. Koch Visser

March 2018

## Declaration

By submitting this thesis electronically, I declare that the entirety of the work contained therein is my own, original work, that I am the sole author thereof (save to the extent explicitly otherwise stated), that reproduction and publication thereof by Stellenbosch University will not infringe any third party rights and that I have not previously in its entirety or in part submitted it for obtaining any qualification.

December 2017

Copyright © 2018 Stellenbosch University

All rights reserved

## Summary

Decreasing estrogen levels, associated with menopause, may cause several unpleasant symptoms. Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) relieves these symptoms, but increases the risk of developing breast cancer. As estrogens promote estrogen-receptor positive (ER<sup>+</sup>) breast cancer, women are seeking alternative forms of hormone therapy and are turning to plant-based products high in phytoestrogens, since they are considered to be a more natural, healthier and potentially safer alternative to HRT. Another alluring aspect of plant-based products are their ability to exert their effect through multiple target mechanisms, which is potentially due to the complex mixture of different bio-active and supporting compounds working together. The current study forms part of a larger ongoing study, which focuses on *Cyclopia*, an indigenous South African fynbos plant, as a potential nutraceutical to reduce menopausal symptoms, while decreasing the risk of breast cancer. The sequential methanol extract of *Cyclopia subternata* (SM6Met) displayed promising results in different *in vitro* and *in vivo* breast cancer experimental systems, with the desired estrogenic characteristics of ER subtype selectivity, specifically ER $\beta$  agonism and ER $\alpha$  antagonism (which is important in ER<sup>+</sup> breast cancer since ER $\alpha$  is known to induce proliferation, whereas ER $\beta$  antagonises ER $\alpha$ ), and the inhibition of estrogen-induced breast cancer cell proliferation. However, the compounds responsible for the desired estrogenic characteristics have not been identified and thus, as a starting point, we focused on the 7 major phenolic compounds quantified in a fraction, F3, obtained from SM6Met. F3 previously displayed robust ER $\beta$  agonism, and the aim of the current study was thus to evaluate the combinatorial effect of these 7 major phenolic compounds to the favourable estrogenic profile of F3. Firstly, an experimental system sensitive enough to detect small drug induced changes was successfully established, after which the phytoestrogenic activity of the 7 major phenolic compounds were tested individually and in combination. Interestingly, the reconstituted fraction

(F3R), in contrast to F3, displayed no significant estrogenic activity when the 7 major phenolic compounds were reconstituted at a concentration equivalent to that which is present in F3. However, when F3R was reconstituted at 100-fold its concentration, a significant increase in activity was observed via both ER subtypes. Mangiferin and luteolin were the only two phenolic compounds that displayed significant and dose-dependent estrogenic activity when tested alone. Since, at this stage of the study, not much was known regarding the estrogenicity of mangiferin, a more in detailed investigation revealed activity via ER $\alpha$  and also, as a novel finding, via ER $\beta$ . The current study concluded that F3's robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity could not be recreated using only the 7 major phenolic compounds at their concentration in F3 but that the minor phenolic compounds play a crucial supporting role in the desired estrogenic profile of this fraction. Thus, the contribution of the 7 major phenolic compounds to F3's activity, and subsequently the multi-target activity of SM6Met, should not be dismissed, since other compounds present in F3, but not in F3R, may act synergistically with the major phenolic compounds to produce the robust ER $\beta$  activity of F3.

## Opsomming

Die vermindering van estrogeenvlakke, wat met menopouse gepaard gaan, kan verskeie onaangename simptome veroorsaak. Hormoon-vervangingsterapie (HVT) verlig hierdie simptome, maar verhoog die risiko om borskanker te ontwikkel. Aangesien estrogeen-reseptor positiewe (ER<sup>+</sup>) borskanker deur estrogeen bevorder word, soek vrouens alternatiewe vorme van hormoonterapie en wend hulle na plantgebaseerde produkte wat hoog is in fitoestrogene, aangesien fitoestrogene beskou word as 'n meer natuurlike, gesonder en potensieel veiliger alternatief teenoor HVT. Nog 'n aanloklike aspek van plantgebaseerde produkte is hul vermoë om hul effek uit te oefen deur verskeie teiken meganismes, wat moontlik te wyte is aan die komplekse mengsel van verskillende bio-aktiewe en ondersteunende verbindings wat saamwerk. Die huidige studie vorm deel van 'n groter deurlopende studie wat fokus op *Cyclopia*, 'n inheemse Suid-Afrikaanse fynbosplant, as 'n potensieële nutraceutiese middel om menopousale simptome te verminder, terwyl die risiko van borskanker verlaag word. Die sekwensiële metanol ekstrak van *Cyclopia subternata* (SM6Met) het belowende resultate in verskeie *in vitro* en *in vivo* borskanker eksperimentele stelsels getoon, met die gewenste estrogeen eienskappe van ER subtypeselektiwiteit, spesifiek ER $\beta$ -agonisme en ER $\alpha$ -antagonisme (wat belangrik is in ER<sup>+</sup> borskanker, aangesien ER $\alpha$  bekend is om proliferasie te bewerkstellig, terwyl ER $\beta$  vir ER $\alpha$  antagoniseer) en die inhibisie van estrogeen-geïnduseerde borskanker proliferasie. Die verbindings wat verantwoordelik is vir die gewenste estrogeen eienskappe is egter nog nie geïdentifiseer nie, en dus as 'n begin punt, word daar gefokus op die 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings wat gekwantifiseer is in 'n fraksie, F3, verkry uit SM6Met. F3 het voorheen robuuste ER $\beta$ -agonisme getoon, en die doel van die huidige studie was dus om die kombinatoriese effek van hierdie 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings te evalueer op die gunstige estrogeenprofiel van F3. Eerstens was 'n eksperimentele stelsel daargestel wat sensitief genoeg is om klein middel-

geïnduceerde veranderings suksesvol op te tel, waarna die fitoestrogeen aktiwiteit van die 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings individueel en in kombinasie getoets is. Interessant genoeg, het die hersaamgestelde fraksie (F3R), in teenstelling met F3, geen beduidende estrogeen aktiwiteit getoon nie toe die 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings gekombineer is by 'n konsentrasie gelykstaande aan wat in F3 teenwoordig is. Toe F3R egter teen 100-voudige konsentrasie hersaamgestel is, is 'n beduidende toename in aktiwiteit waargeneem via beide ER subtypes. Mangiferin en luteolin was die enigste twee fenoliese verbindings wat beduidende en dosis afhanklike estrogeen aktiwiteit getoon het toe hulle alleen getoets is. Aangesien daar op hierdie stadium van die studie nie veel bekend was omtrent die estrogenisiteit van mangiferin nie, het 'n meer gedetailleerde ondersoek aktiwiteit via ER $\alpha$ , en ook as 'n nuwe bevinding via ER $\beta$ , aan die lig gebring. Die huidige studie het tot die gevolgtrekking gekom dat F3 se robuuste ER $\beta$ -agonistiese aktiwiteit nie herskep kon word deur slegs die 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings by hul konsentrasie in F3 te gebruik nie, maar dat die ander fenoliese verbindings 'n belangrike ondersteunings rol speel in die gewenste estrogeenprofiel van hierdie fraksie. Dus, moet die bydrae van die 7 hoof fenoliese verbindings tot F3 se aktiwiteit, en die daaropvolgende multi-doelaktiwiteit van SM6Met, nie gering geskat word nie, aangesien ander verbindings teenwoordig in F3, maar nie in F3R, sinergisties mag optree met die hoof fenoliese verbindings om die robuuste ER $\beta$  aktiwiteit van F3 te produseer.

## Acknowledgements

My supervisor, Prof. Ann Louw, thank you for giving me the opportunity to pursue this study. Your time, patience and guidance are greatly appreciated as it allowed me to develop and grow as a scientist and as a person.

My co-supervisor, Dr Koch Visser, thank you for your time and mentorship in the laboratory.

To the members of the Louw and Africander laboratory, thank you for all your support, encouragement and friendship.

Carmen Langeveldt, thank you for your impeccable management of the Louw and Africander laboratory, your many hours in tissue culture, and your support during difficult times.

The South Africa National Research Foundation (NRF), thank you for financial support.

Employees of the Central Analytical Facility (CAF), Stellenbosch University, thank you for your time and guidance with the LC-MS/MS and NMR analyses.

Thank you to my friends and family for emotional support.

Lastly, I want to thank the Lord Almighty for giving me the ability and strength to write this thesis.

## List of Abbreviations

$^3\text{H-E}_2$	Tritiated 17- $\beta$ estradiol
2-AAF	2-acetylaminofluorene
ABTS•+	2,2'-azinobis-(3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid
AD	anno Domini
AF-1	Activation function-1
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ANOVA	Analysis of variance
AOM	Azoxymethane
BC	Before Christ
BRCA	Breast Cancer
BSA	Bovine serum albumin
CAF	Central Analytical Facilities
CAM	Complementary/alternative medicine
cAMP	Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
CANSA	Cancer Association of South Africa
CPM	Counts per minute
DBD	DNA binding domain
DMEM	Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium
DMSO	Dimethyl sulfoxide
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid



E <sub>1</sub>	Estrone
E <sub>2</sub>	17-β Estradiol
E <sub>3</sub>	Estriol
EAc	Ethyl acetate
ECL	Enhanced chemiluminescence
EDTA	Ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid
EGFR	Epidermal growth factor receptor
ER	Estrogen receptor
ER <sup>+</sup>	Estrogen receptor positive
ERα	Estrogen receptor alpha
ERβ	Estrogen receptor beta
ERE	Estrogen response element
ERK	Extracellular signal-regulated kinase
ERm	Membrane-bound estrogen receptor
ESI	Electrospray ionization
Eth/EtOH	Ethanol
F1	Fraction 1
F2	Fraction 2
F3	Fraction 3
F3R	Reconstituted Fraction 3
FCS	Fetal calf serum

FRAP	Ferric Reducing Ability of Plasma
GAPDH	Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase
GF	Growth factor
GSH	Glutathione
GSSG	Glutathione disulfide
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HPCCC	High performance counter-current chromatography
HRP	Horseradish peroxidase
HRT	Hormone replacement therapy
ICI	fulvestrant (ICI 182,780)
ICR	Institute of Cancer Research
IGF-1R	Insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor
Iri	Iriflophenone
Isoman	Isomangiferin
kDa	Kilo Dalton
LB	lysogeny broth
LBD	Ligand binding domain
Luc	Luciferase
Lut	Luteolin
Man	Mangiferin
MAP	Mitogen-activated protein

Met	Methanol
MNU	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N</i> -nitrosourea
MTT	3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide
MS	Mass spectrometry
N	Non-sequential extracts
NMR	Nuclear magnetic resonance
NPF	Non-polar fraction
NSB	Non-specific binding
ORAC	Oxygen Radical Absorbance Capacity
PAGE	Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis
PBS	Phosphate-buffered saline
<i>p</i> -Cou	<i>p</i> -Coumaric acid
PDA	Photo diode array
PF	Polar fraction
PKA	Protein kinase A
PRSCF	Polyphenol rich seed coat fraction
Proto	Protocatechuic acid
PTEN/MMAC1	Phosphatase, tensin homologue/mutated in multiple advanced cancers
QTOF	Quadrupole time-of-flight
RLU	Relative light unit
ROS	Reactive oxygen species

S	Sequential extracts
SB	Specific binding
Scoly	Scolymoside
SDS	Sodium dodecyl sulphate
SE	Standard error
SED	Standard error of a difference
SERM	Selective estrogen receptor modulator
SM6Met	Sequential methanol extracts of <i>Cyclopia subternata</i> harvesting M6
STZ	Streptozotocin
TB	Total binding
TBS	Tris-buffered saline
TBST	Tris-buffered saline tween-20
TF	Transcription factor
TCM	Traditional Chinese medicine
TEAC	Trolox Equivalent Antioxidant Capacity
UPLC	Ultra-performance liquid chromatography
Wat/dH <sub>2</sub> O	Distilled water
WHO	World Health Organisation

## **To**

My mother and father, Estelle and Herman Claassen, thank you for all your love, support and encouragement. I am eternal grateful for the sacrifices you made for me.

# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1: Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1. References .....	7
<b>Chapter 2: Literature Review .....</b>	<b>16</b>
2.1. Introduction.....	17
2.2. History and evolution of phytomedicine.....	18
2.2.1. Ancient traditional medicine.....	18
2.2.2. Introduction of science and development of modern medicine .....	20
2.2.3. Traditional medicine in the 21 <sup>st</sup> century .....	22
2.3. The concept (theory and practice) of synergism.....	24
2.4. <i>Cyclopia</i> (Honeybush) .....	27
2.4.1. Health benefits of <i>Cyclopia</i> .....	30
2.5. Mechanisms of action of phytoestrogens.....	32
2.5.1. Estrogen signalling pathway .....	34
2.6. Major phenolic compounds in <i>Cyclopia</i> SM6Met fraction .....	37
2.7. Conclusion .....	38
2.8. References.....	39
<b>Chapter 3: Material and Methods .....</b>	<b>52</b>
3.1. Characterisation of cell lines used in study.....	53
3.1.1. Cell culture.....	53
3.1.2. Western blot analysis .....	55
3.1.2.1. Transfection of cells.....	55
3.1.2.2. Preparations of Western blot ana .....	56
3.1.2.3. Western blot.....	56
3.2. Assays to test estrogenic activity .....	58
3.2.1. Test compounds .....	58
3.2.2. Preparation of compounds .....	58
3.2.3. Proliferation assay.....	59
3.2.3.1. Pre-optimisation protocol (previous lab protocol).....	60
3.2.3.2. Optimisation.....	60
3.2.3.3. Post-optimisation protocol.....	61
3.2.4. Promoter Reporter Studies .....	62

3.2.4.1. Plasmids and plasmid preparation .....	62
3.2.4.2. Promoter reporter assay .....	63
3.2.4.2.1. Dose Response protocol.....	65
3.2.4.2.2. Addition and Subtraction protocol.....	65
3.2.4.2.3. Synergism protocol .....	66
3.2.5. Whole cell binding.....	66
3.3. LC-MS/MS analysis .....	67
3.4. NMR analysis.....	68
3.5. Statistical analysis .....	68
3.6. References .....	69
<b>Chapter 4: Validation of Experimental Systems .....</b>	<b>71</b>
4.1. Introduction.....	72
4.2. Results and Discussion .....	73
4.2.1. Characterisation of cell lines.....	73
4.2.2. Optimisations of assays used to test estrogenic activity .....	75
4.2.2.1. Optimisation of cell proliferation assay protocol: investigating different cell numbers, tissue culture plate sizes and various induction times.....	75
4.2.2.2. Optimisation of Promotor Reporter Assay .....	80
4.2.3. Validation of optimised experimental protocols.....	82
4.2.3.1. Validation of optimised proliferation protocol using SM6Met, NPF and F3 .....	83
4.2.3.2. Validation of optimised promoter reporter protocol using SM6Met, NPF and F3 .....	85
4.3. Conclusion .....	90
4.4. References.....	93
<b>Chapter 5: Investigating the contribution of the major phenolic compounds identified in F3, to the robust ER<math>\beta</math> activity of F3.....</b>	<b>96</b>
5.1. Introduction .....	97
5.2. Results and discussion.....	99
5.2.1. Evaluation of the estrogenic activity of reconstituted F3 (F3R). .....	99
5.2.2. Estrogenic activity of the phenolic compounds in F3R.....	102
5.2.2.1. Estrogenic activity of the individual phenolic compounds in F3R.....	102
5.2.2.2. Detailed investigation of estrogenic activity of the estrogenic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin. ....	107
5.2.2.3. Identifying the phenolic compounds contributing to the activity of 100x F3R. ....	112

5.2.3. Combination of the estrogenic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, to investigate possible interaction .....	119
5.3. Conclusion.....	121
5.4. References .....	126
5.5. Supplementary Data .....	136
<b>Chapter 6: Final Discussion and Conclusion .....</b>	<b>147</b>
6.1. References .....	156



# **Chapter 1: Introduction**

Estrogens are steroid hormones that play an important role in the development, functioning and maintenance of various systems including the reproductive, immune, musculoskeletal, cardiovascular, and central nervous system [1–6]. The different endogenous estrogens: estrone ( $E_1$ ), estradiol ( $E_2$ ) and estriol ( $E_3$ ), have tissue specific roles and their concentrations in the female body vary during different stages of a woman's life (puberty, menstrual cycle, pregnancy and menopause), with  $E_2$  being the most abundant and potent estrogen [3,7–15]. Therefore, a decrease in endogenous estrogens, associated with the onset of menopause, causes many unpleasant vasomotor symptoms such as hot flashes and night sweats, and could also lead to the development of osteoporosis, cardiovascular diseases, mental diseases such as Schizophrenia and Alzheimer's disease, and strokes [4,15–21].

Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) was for many years considered to be the best treatment for menopausal symptoms and related diseases, until numerous clinical studies showed that the intake of exogenous or synthetic estrogens have various risks and side effects, including, but not limited to, weight gain, irregular bleeding, headaches, breast tenderness and pain, depression, and the promotion of estrogen-related cancers such as breast cancer [15,22–29].

Breast cancer is the most common occurring cancer in women, and although breast cancer statistics vary between different population groups, ethnic groups and ages, this epidemic has a social and economic impact on both developed and developing countries [25,30–40]. South Africa is no exception, with breast cancer ranking top of the list of cancers among South African women [41,42]. According to the Cancer Association of South Africa (CANSA), the lifetime risk of developing breast cancer for South African women of all races average 1 in every 29 [43]. Estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer is the most common type of breast cancer, and many of the risk factors associated with ER positive breast cancer (obesity, early menarche, the use of hormone contraceptives, late birth of first child, late menopause) are linked to estrogens [30,44–47]. Also, with a higher occurrence of breast cancer after the

age of 50, women are seeking safer alternatives for the treatment of menopausal symptoms and related diseases, with reduced risk of developing breast cancers [30,32,48–51].

Estrogens (endogenous and exogenous) mediate their intracellular effects through the two ER's, ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  [6,52,53]. The amino acid sequence difference in the structural (A to F region) and functional (DNA binding, ligand binding, AF-1 and AF-2) domains between ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  indicate that these two receptors have different physiological functions [52–55]. ER $\alpha$  is known to induce cell proliferation, whereas ER $\beta$  has shown anti-proliferative activity by antagonising ER $\alpha$  [55–58]. Most therapeutic targets for estrogen related diseases, such as breast cancer, focus on compounds that mediate their effects directly or indirectly through ER $\alpha$  [52,54,59,60]. Specifically, for breast cancer, the current hormonal therapy for ER positive breast cancer focuses on tamoxifen (a selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERM)) as 1<sup>st</sup> line of therapy, and fulvestrant (a full ER antagonist) as a follow up therapy when tamoxifen fails [60–65]. However, the current therapies for breast cancer have side effects and often result in therapy resistance. Thus, new therapeutic targets are needed [65–68]. ER $\beta$  is considered an eligible molecular target due to the 'yin yang' relationship that ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  display and, therefore, compounds that mediate their effects via ER $\beta$  (potentially inhibiting ER $\alpha$ ), are of great interest in novel ER related therapy development [57,68–70].

Plant-based products high in phytoestrogens (e.g. soy or red clover) are considered to be a more natural, healthier and potentially safer alternative to HRT [71]. Phytoestrogens are structurally similar to endogenous estrogen, and therefore, can exert an estrogenic and/or anti-estrogenic effect directly or indirectly via the ERs [72–75]. Many phytoestrogens have been shown to mediate their effect through ER $\beta$ , making these compounds desirable as novel phytoestrogenic nutraceuticals [68,74,76,77]. Various studies have also linked plant extracts and plant-based diets to lower prevalence of cancer, including breast cancer, and they have

been shown to have protective properties against osteoporosis, type II diabetes, cardiovascular-, immune-, and neurological diseases [71,78–87].

Combination therapies using different phytochemicals have also been shown to be more effective in treating complex diseases, such as cancer, compared to single active phytochemicals, suggesting that the mixture of compounds interact in an additive or synergistic manner to elicit a multi-target mode of action [88–94]. The higher effectiveness of medicinal plants and plant extracts is thought to be due to the complex mixture of different (active and supporting) phytochemicals, with the supporting compounds contributing to the stability, solubility, bioavailability, absorption and/or potency of the active compounds [87,92,95,96]. However, plant extracts and plant products still need to be used with caution, since the phytochemical interactions and the molecular mechanisms of all the different phytochemicals are not as well studied as single active compounds or synthetic drugs [97,98].

The current study forms part of a larger ongoing study, which focuses on *Cyclopia*, an indigenous South African fynbos plant that has displayed nutraceutical potential with phytoestrogenic, anti-mutagenic, anti-inflammatory and anti-diabetic activity [99–105]. A decade of *Cyclopia* work has been conducted within our research group, initiated by a study done by Verhoog *et al.* [106,74,100], who investigated the phytoestrogenic activity of different *Cyclopia* species: *C. intermedia*, *C. sessiliflora*, *C. genistoides* and *C. subternata*, with the latter two species displaying the highest phytoestrogenic activity. In addition, Mfenyana *et al.* [107], investigated different harvestings of *C. genistoides* and *C. subternata*. The air-dried dichloromethane plant extracts were prepared in three different ways: sequential extracts (S), non-sequential extracts (N) and cup-of-tea extracts, and five solvents were used based on polarity differences: ethyl acetate (EAc), ethanol (Eth), methanol (Met), 50% methanol–distilled water (Hlf) and distilled water (Wat). The sequential methanol

extract from *C. subternata* harvesting M6 (SM6Met) produced both high yield and high phytoestrogenic potency in the different experimental systems (promoter-reporter assay, whole cell ER-binding, alkaline phosphatase activity and E-screen) used in the study [107,108]. Furthermore, in a study by Visser *et al.*, SM6Met displayed ER $\alpha$  antagonism, ER $\beta$  agonism, and inhibition of E<sub>2</sub>-induced breast cancer cell proliferation *in vitro*, as well as ER $\alpha$  antagonism *in vivo* by delaying ER $\alpha$  induced uterine growth in an immature rat uterotrophic model [109,105,81]. These favourable estrogenic attributes of SM6Met led to an *in vivo* study by Visser *et al.* where SM6Met reduced tumour frequency, mass and volume in a *N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourea (MNU)-induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis model [105].

To fully evaluate SM6Met's multi-target mode of action, the extract was fractionated and the contribution of all the fractions of SM6Met to its favourable estrogenic attributes was investigated. Specifically, SM6Met was fractionated by Mortimer *et al.* [90,110], using liquid-liquid fractionation to obtain a polar fraction (PF) and a non-polar fraction (NPF), with the NPF retaining all the favourable estrogenic attributes of SM6Met. The NPF was then fractionated into 3 fractions (F1, F2 and F3) using high performance counter-current chromatography (HPLCC) and the phenolic content of these fractions were identified and quantified with liquid chromatography tandem mass spectrometry (LC-MS/MS) and quantitative HPLC, respectively. SM6Met's favourable estrogenic profile was, however, divided between the fractions with F1 and F2 displaying ER $\alpha$  antagonism and F3 displaying robust ER $\beta$  agonism. Further research is needed to understand how the different phenolic compounds in each fraction contribute to that fraction's favourable estrogenic profile.

The current study continues on from Mortimer's findings and focusses on F3, since compounds that mediate their activity via ER $\beta$ , and subsequently inhibit ER $\alpha$  activity, are of great interest in novel treatment development for estrogen-related diseases [56,57,68,76]. Mortimer identified 15 phenolic compounds in F3, however, only 7 of these compounds were

quantified [90]. The main focus of the current study is to investigate the combinatorial or possible synergistic contribution of these 7 major phenolic compounds in F3 to the favourable estrogenic profile of F3.

**The Aims of the current study therefore are to:**

1. Develop an estrogenic assay with increased sensitivity to detect compound-induced changes, and subsequently establish higher accuracy when investigating the interaction of compounds and possible synergism.
2. Reconstitute F3 (F3R) using only the 7 major phenolic compounds (mangiferin, isomangiferin, luteolin, scolyoside, iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside, protocatechuic acid and *p*-coumaric acid) as a starting point to investigate their contribution to F3's activity.
3. Investigate the estrogenic activity of the individual phenolic compounds in F3R to establish which of the compounds are the active estrogenic compounds.
4. Use addition and subtraction studies to investigate the supporting role of the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds in the estrogenic activity of F3R.
5. Investigate combinatorial or synergistic activity of the estrogenic phenolic compounds using a fixed ratio isobologram.

The remainder of the dissertation consists of five chapters. The literature review (**Chapter 2**) will touch on the history and evolution of traditional and modern medicine, the limitations of modern medicine in combating complex multifaceted diseases, such as cancer, and the future of phytomedicine and intelligent drug mixtures. Furthermore, an overview of the molecular mechanisms and related pathways of phytochemicals, specifically phytoestrogens, will be discussed. The literature review will also include a section on *Cyclopia* and related phytochemicals used in the current study. In addition, the literature review will elaborate on the concept of synergism, including the advantages of synergism in therapy development and

methods to determine combinatorial or synergistic drug interactions. **Chapter 3** contains the materials and methods used in the current study. **Chapter 4** addresses Aim 1 and focusses on the optimisation and validation of two *in vitro* experimental systems, the cell proliferation assay in MCF-7 BUS cells and promoter reporter studies in HEK293 cells, with the purpose of establishing an experimental system with increased sensitivity, which is especially important when testing drug interactions and possible synergism. **Chapter 5** addresses Aims 2-5, and discusses the limitations of the current study including the susceptibility of phenolic compounds and tissue culture systems to external changes. The last chapter (**Chapter 6**) contextualise the results from the current study into the bigger scope of phytomedicine and addresses future work.

With the current findings being but a small piece of a larger puzzle, investigating the contribution of the 7 major phenolic compounds in F3 will provide insight into the desired ER $\beta$  agonist activity of this fraction and reveal the complexity of the combinatorial activity of plant extracts.

## 1.1. References

1. Lippman M, Bolan G, Huff K. The Effects of Estrogens and Antiestrogens on Hormone-responsive Human Breast Cancer in Long-Term Tissue Culture. *Cancer Res.* 1976;36.
2. Jordan VC, Mittal S, Gosden B, Koch R, Lieberman ME. Structure-activity relationships of estrogens. *Environ Health Perspect.* 1985;61: 97–110.
3. Heldring N, Pike A, Andersson S, Matthews J, Cheng G, Treuter E, *et al.* Estrogen Receptors : How Do They Signal and What Are Their Targets. *Physiol Rev.* 2007;87: 905–931.
4. Nakamura T, Imai Y, Matsumoto T, Sato S, Takeuchi K, Igarashi K, *et al.* Estrogen Prevents Bone Loss via Estrogen Receptor  $\alpha$  and Induction of Fas Ligand in Osteoclasts. *Cell.* 2007;130: 811–823.
5. Simpson E. Sources of estrogen and their importance. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.*

- 2003;86: 225–230.
6. Nilsson S, Gustafsson J-Å. Biological Role of Estrogen and Estrogen Receptors. *Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol*. 2002;37: 1–28.
  7. Pincus G, Pearlman WH. Metabolism of estrone in men and non-pregnant women. *Endocrinology*. The Endocrine Society; 1942;31: 507–514.
  8. Loriaux DL, Ruder HJ, Knab DR, Lipsett MB. Estrone Sulfate, Estrone, Estradiol and Estriol Plasma Levels in Human Pregnancy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. The Endocrine Society; 1972;35: 887–891.
  9. Siler-Khodr TM, Khodr GS, Valenzuela G, Rhode J. Gonadotropin-releasing Hormone Effects on Placental Hormones during Gestation: II. Progesterone, Estrone, Estradiol and Estriol. *Biol Reprod*. 1986;34: 5–264.
  10. Klein KO, Baron J, Colli MJ, McDonnell DP, Cutler GB. Estrogen Levels in Childhood Determined by an Ultrasensitive Recombinant Cell Bioassay. 1994;94: 2475–2480.
  11. Kaijser M, Granath F, Jacobsen G, Cnattingius S, Ekblom A. Maternal Pregnancy Estriol Levels in Relation to Anamnestic and Fetal Anthropometric Data. *Epidemiology*. 2000;11: 315–319.
  12. Mucci LA, Laggiou P, Tamimi RM, Hsieh C-C, Adami H-O, Trichopoulos D, *et al*. Pregnancy estriol, estradiol, progesterone and other birth size variables (United States). *Cancer Causes Control*. 2003;14: 311–318.
  13. Suzuki N, Yano T, Nakazawa N, Yoshikawa H, Taketani Y. A possible role of estrone produced in adipose tissues in modulating postmenopausal bone density. *Maturitas*. Elsevier; 1995;22: 9–12.
  14. Lippman M, Monaco ME, Bolan G. Effects of Estrone, Estradiol, and Estriol on Hormone responsive Human Breast Cancer in Long-Term Tissue Culture. *Cancer Res*. 1977;37: 1901–1907.
  15. Lignieres B de. Hormone replacement therapy: clinical benefits and side-effects. *Maturitas*. 1996;23: S31–S36.
  16. Hormonal Health and Balance Information.pdf. In: *Jace Medicine* [Internet]. Available: <http://www.jacemedical.com/articles/>
  17. Bhavnani BR. Estrogens and menopause: pharmacology of conjugated equine estrogens and their potential role in the prevention of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2003;85: 473–482.
  18. Kanis JA. Estrogens, the menopause, and osteoporosis. *Bone*. Elsevier; 1996;19: 185S–190S.



19. Potischman N, Swanson C a., Siiteri P, Hoover RN. Reversal of relation between body mass and endogenous estrogen concentrations with menopausal status. *J Natl Cancer Inst.* 1996;88: 756–758.
20. Simpkins JW, Yang S-H, Wen Y, Singh M. Estrogens, progestins, menopause and neurodegeneration: basic and clinical studies. *C Cell Mol Life Sci.* 2005;6205: 271–280.
21. Tang MX, Jacobs D, Stern Y, Marder K, Schofield P, Garland B, *et al.* Effect of oestrogen during menopause on risk and age at onset of Alzheimer’s disease. *Lancet.* 1996;348: 429–432.
22. Vihtamäki T, Savilahti R, Tuimala R. Why do postmenopausal women discontinue hormone replacement therapy? *Maturitas.* 1999;33: 99–105.
23. Björn I, Bäckström T. Drug related negative side-effects is a common reason for poor compliance in hormone replacement therapy. *Maturitas.* 1999;32: 77–86.
24. Breast cancer and hormone replacement therapy: collaborative reanalysis of data from 51 epidemiological studies of 52705 women with breast cancer and 108411 women without breast cancer. *Lancet.* 1997;350: 1047–1059.
25. Al-Azzawi F, Alt J, Aso T, Bast R, Bevilacqua G, Bonanni B, *et al.* Controversial issues in climacteric medicine II Hormone replacement therapy and cancer. *Climacteric.* 2001;4: 181–193.
26. Banks E, Beral V, Bull D, Reeves G, *et al.* Breast cancer and hormone-replacement therapy in the Million Women Study. *Lancet.* 2003;362: 419–27.
27. Chen C-L, Weiss NS, Newcomb P, Barlow W, White E. Hormone Replacement Therapy in Relation to Breast Cancer. *JAMA.* 2002;287: 734–741.
28. Schairer C, Brinton LA. The Effect of Estrogen Plus Progestin Hormone Therapy on Breast Cancer Mortality: Still Unresolved. *JNCI J Natl Cancer Inst.* 2013;105: 513–514.
29. Hilakivi-Clarke L, Warri A. Exposures to Synthetic Estrogens at Different Times During the Life, and Their Effect on Breast Cancer Risk. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia.* 2013;18: 25–42.
30. McPherson K, Steel CM, Dixon JM. ABC of breast diseases. Breast cancer-epidemiology, risk factors and genetics. *Br Med J.* 1994;309: 1003–1006.
31. DeSantis CE, Bray F, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Anderson BO, Jemal A. International Variation in Female Breast Cancer Incidence and Mortality Rates. *Cancer Epidemiology Biomarkers & Prevention.* 2015;24: OF1-OF12.
32. DeSantis C, Ma J, Bryan L, Jemal A. Breast Cancer Statistics , 2013. *Cancer J Clin.*

2013;64: 52–62.

33. WHO | Breast cancer: prevention and control. In: WHO [Internet]. World Health Organization; 2016 [cited 24 Oct 2016]. Available: <http://www.who.int/cancer/detection/breastcancer/en/>
34. Chlebowski RT, Chen Z, Anderson GL, Rohan T, Aragaki A, Lane D, *et al.* Ethnicity and breast cancer: factors influencing differences in incidence and outcome. *J Natl Cancer Inst.* Oxford University Press; 2005;97: 439–48.
35. DeSantis CE, Fedewa SA, Goding Sauer A, Kramer JL, Smith RA, Jemal A. Breast cancer statistics, 2015: Convergence of incidence rates between black and white women. *CA Cancer J Clin.* 2016;66: 31–42.
36. Lantz PM, Booth KM. The social construction of the breast cancer epidemic. *Soc Sci Med.* 1998;46: 907–918.
37. Akarolo-Anthony SN, Ogundiran TO, Adebamowo CA, Farmer P, Frenk J, Knaul F, *et al.* Emerging breast cancer epidemic: evidence from Africa. *Breast Cancer Res. BioMed Central;* 2010;12: 1-4.
38. Grunfeld E, Coyle D, Whelan T, Clinch J, Reyno L, Earle CC, *et al.* Family caregiver burden: results of a longitudinal study of breast cancer patients and their principal caregivers. *CMAJ.* Canadian Medical Association; 2004;170: 1795–801.
39. Gordon L, Scuffham P, Hayes S, Newman B. Exploring the economic impact of breast cancers during the 18 months following diagnosis. *Psychooncology.* 2007;16: 1130–1139.
40. Coughlin SS, Ekwueme DU. Breast cancer as a global health concern. *Cancer Epidemiol.* 2009;33: 315–318.
41. Vorobiof DA, Sitas F, Vorobiof G. Breast cancer incidence in South Africa. *J Clin Oncol.* American Society of Clinical Oncology; 2001;19: 125S–127S.
42. Summary Statistics of Cancer Diagnosed Histologically in South Africa. National Health Laboratory Service; 2011. p. 43.
43. Women and Cancer | CANSA. In: The Cancer Association of South Africa [Internet]. 2016 [cited 25 Oct 2016]. Available: [http://www.cansa.org.za/womens-health/?gclid=Cj0KEQjw4rbABRD\\_gfPA2-uQqroBEiQA58MNdJsGmhOdr5tKdzNomw9XJicYIpTzATO8toYKO-B4R9caAnVC8P8HAQ](http://www.cansa.org.za/womens-health/?gclid=Cj0KEQjw4rbABRD_gfPA2-uQqroBEiQA58MNdJsGmhOdr5tKdzNomw9XJicYIpTzATO8toYKO-B4R9caAnVC8P8HAQ)
44. Hsieh C-Y, Santoli RC, Haslam SZ, Helferich WG. Estrogenic Effects of Genistein on the Growth of Estrogen Receptor-positive Human Breast Cancer (MCF-7) Cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *CANCER Res.* 1998;58: 3833–3838.

45. Key TJ, Verkasalo PK, Banks E. Epidemiology of breast cancer. *Lancet Oncol.* 2001;2: 133–140.
46. Types of Breast Cancer: Triple Negative, ER-Positive, HER2-Positive. In: WebMD [Internet]. 2016. Available: <http://www.webmd.com/breast-cancer/breast-cancer-types-er-positive-her2-positive#1-2>
47. Yang XR, Sherman ME, Rimm DL, Lissowska J, Brinton LA, Peplonska B, *et al.* Differences in Risk Factors for Breast Cancer Molecular Subtypes in a Population-Based Study. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev.* 2007;16: 439–43.
48. Pike MCC. Age-related factors in cancers of the breast, ovary, and endometrium. *J Chronic Dis.* Pergamon Journals Limited; 1987;40 Suppl 2: 59S–69S.
49. Milanese TR, Hartmann LC, Sellers TA, Frost MH, Vierkant RA, Maloney SD, *et al.* Age-related lobular involution and risk of breast cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst.* 2006;98: 1600–1607.
50. American Cancer Society. Breast cancer: facts and figures 2011–2012. American Cancer Society. Atlanta; 2012.
51. Miller AB, Baines CJ, To T, Wall C. Canadian National Breast Screening Study: 2. Breast cancer detection and death rates among women aged 50 to 59 years. *Can Med Assoc J.* 1992;147: 1477–1488.
52. Shao W, Brown M. Advances in estrogen receptor biology: prospects for improvements in targeted breast cancer therapy. *Breast Cancer Res.* 2004;6: 39–52.
53. Katzenellenbogen BS, Choi I, Delage-Mourroux R, Ediger TR, Martini PG V, Montano M, *et al.* Molecular mechanisms of estrogen action: Selective ligands and receptor pharmacology. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2000;74: 279–285.
54. Ariazi E a, Ariazi JL, Cordera F, Jordan VC. Estrogen receptors as therapeutic targets in breast cancer. *Curr Top Med Chem.* 2006;6: 181–202.
55. Leitman DC, Paruthiyil S, Vivar OI, Saunier EF, Herber CB, Cohen I, *et al.* Regulation of specific target genes and biological responses by estrogen receptor subtype agonists. *Curr Opin Pharmacol.* Elsevier Ltd; 2010;10: 629–636.
56. Lattrich C, Stegerer A, Häring J, Schüller S, Ortmann O, Treeck O. Estrogen receptor  $\beta$  agonists affect growth and gene expression of human breast cancer cell lines. *Steroids.* Elsevier Inc.; 2013;78: 195–202.
57. Sareddy GR, Vadlamudi RK. Cancer therapy using natural ligands that target estrogen receptor beta. *Chin J Nat Med.* China Pharmaceutical University; 2015;13: 801–807.
58. Warner M, Gustafsson J-Å. The role of estrogen receptor beta (ERbeta) in malignant diseases - a new potential target for antiproliferative drugs in prevention and treatment

- of cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun.* 2010;396: 63–6.
59. Deroo BJ, Korach KS. Review series estrogen receptors and human disease. *J Clin Invest.* 2006;116: 561–570.
  60. Long X, Nephew KP. Fulvestrant (ICI 182,780)-dependent interacting proteins mediate immobilization and degradation of estrogen receptor- $\alpha$ . *J Biol Chem.* 2006;281: 9607–9615.
  61. Dudley MW, Sheeler CQ, Wang H, Khan S. Activation of the human estrogen receptor by the antiestrogens ICI 182,780 and tamoxifen in yeast genetic systems: implications for their mechanism of action. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2000;97: 3696–3701.
  62. Ent CK, Sborne O. Tamoxifen in the Treatment of Breast Cancer. *N Engl J Med.* 1998;339: 1609–1618.
  63. Robertson JF. ICI 182,780 (Fulvestrant) - the first oestrogen receptor down-regulator--current clinical data. *Br J Cancer.* 2001;85 Suppl 2: 11–4.
  64. Shou J, Massarweh S, Osborne CK, Wakeling AE, Ali S, Weiss H, *et al.* Mechanisms of Tamoxifen Resistance: Increased Estrogen Receptor-HER2/neu Cross-Talk in ER/HER2-Positive Breast Cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst.* 2004;96: 926–935.
  65. Ring A, Dowsett M. Mechanisms of tamoxifen resistance. *Endocr Relat Cancer. BioScientifica;* 2004;11: 643–58.
  66. Skliris GP, Leygue E, Watson PH, Murphy LC. Estrogen receptor alpha negative breast cancer patients: estrogen receptor beta as a therapeutic target. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2008;109: 1–10.
  67. Hodges-Gallagher L, Valentine CD, Bader SE, Kushner PJ. Estrogen receptor beta increases the efficacy of antiestrogens by effects on apoptosis and cell cycling in breast cancer cells. *Breast Cancer Res Treat.* 2008;109: 241–250.
  68. Warner M, Gustafsson J-Å. The role of estrogen receptor beta (ERbeta) in malignant diseases - A new potential target for antiproliferative drugs in prevention and treatment of cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun. Elsevier Inc.;* 2010;396: 63–66.
  69. Lindberg MK, Rare SM, Skrtic S, Gao H, Dahlman-Wright K, Gustafsson J-Å, *et al.* Estrogen receptor (ER)- $\beta$  reduces ER $\alpha$ -regulated gene transcription, supporting a “ying yang” relationship between ERalpha and ERbeta in mice. *Mol Endocrinol.* 2003;17: 203–8.
  70. Palmieri C, Cheng G, Saji S, Zelada-Hedman M, Wärrri A, Weihua Z, *et al.* Estrogen receptor beta in breast cancer. *Endocrine-Related Cancer. Elsevier Ireland Ltd;* 2002;9: 1–13.
  71. Chiechi LM. Dietary phytoestrogens in the prevention of long-term postmenopausal

- diseases. *Int J Gynecol Obstet.* 1999;67: 39–40.
72. Murkies AL, Wilcox G, Davis SR. Phytoestrogens. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab. Endocrine Society;* 1998;83: 297–303.
  73. S Sebastian PK, Varman Thampan R. Phytoestrogens. *Indian J Biotechnol.* 2003;2: 387–395.
  74. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Screening of four *Cyclopia* (honeybush) species for putative phyto-oestrogenic activity by oestrogen receptor binding assays. *S Afr J Sci.* 2007; 13–21.
  75. Louw A, Joubert E, Visser K. Phytoestrogenic potential of *Cyclopia* extracts and polyphenols. *Planta Med.* 2013;79: 580–590.
  76. Paterni I, Granchi C, Katzenellenbogen J, Minutolo F. Estrogen receptors alpha (ER $\alpha$ ) and beta (ER $\beta$ ): Subtype-selective ligands and clinical potential. *Steroids.* 2014. pp. 13–29.
  77. Hayashi S, Niwa T, Yamaguchi Y. Estrogen signaling pathway and its imaging in human breast cancer. *Cancer Sci. Blackwell Publishing Asia;* 2009;100: 1773–1778.
  78. Steinmetz KA, Potter JD. Vegetables, fruit, and cancer prevention: A review. *J Am Diet Assoc.* 1996;96: 1027–1039.
  79. Lee HP, Lee J, Gourley L, Duffy SW, Day NE, Estève J. Dietary effects on breast-cancer risk in Singapore. *Lancet. Elsevier;* 1991;337: 1197–1200.
  80. Adlercreutz H. Phyto-oestrogens and cancer. *Lancet Oncol.* 2002;3: 364–373.
  81. Visser JAK. Phytoestrogenic Extracts of *Cyclopia* Modulate Molecular Targets Involved in the Prevention and Treatment of Breast Cancer. PhD dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2013.
  82. Setchell K, Lydeking-Olsen E. Dietary Phytoestrogen And Their Effect On Bone: Evidence From *In vitro* And *In vivo*, Human Observational, And Dietary Intervention Studies. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2003;78: 539S–609S.
  83. Al-Anazi AF, Qureshi VF, Javaid K, Qureshi S. Preventive effects of phytoestrogens against postmenopausal osteoporosis as compared to the available therapeutic choices: An overview. *J Nat Sci Biol Med. Medknow Publications;* 2011;2: 154–63.
  84. Wroblewski Lissin L, Cooke JP. Phytoestrogens and cardiovascular health. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2000;35: 1403–1410.
  85. Slavin J, Jacobs D, Marquart L. Whole-grain consumption and chronic disease: Protective mechanisms. *Nutr Cancer.* 1997;27: 14–21.

86. Willcox JK, Ash SL, Catignani GL. Antioxidants and Prevention of Chronic Disease. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr*. 2004;44: 275–295.
87. Kennedy DO, Wightman EL. Herbal extracts and phytochemicals: plant secondary metabolites and the enhancement of human brain function. *Adv Nutr*. American Society for Nutrition; 2011;2: 32–50.
88. Wagner H. Synergy research: Approaching a new generation of phytopharmaceuticals. *Fitoterapia*. 2011;82: 34–37.
89. Liu RH. Health benefits of fruit and vegetables are from additive and synergistic combinations of phytochemicals. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2003;78: 3–6.
90. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia* nutraceutical extract, SM6Met. *PLoS One*. 2015;10: 1–22.
91. Rasoanaivo P, Wright CW, Willcox ML, Gilbert B. Whole plant extracts versus single compounds for the treatment of malaria: synergy and positive interactions. *Malar J*. *BioMed Central*; 2011;10: 1–12.
92. Efferth T, Koch E. Complex interactions between phytochemicals. The multi-target therapeutic concept of phytotherapy. *Curr Drug Targets*. 2011;12: 122–132.
93. Kumar R, Verma V, Jain A, Jain RK, Maikhuri JP, Gupta G. Synergistic chemoprotective mechanisms of dietary phytoestrogens in a select combination against prostate cancer. *J Nutr Biochem*. 2011;22: 723–31.
94. Williamson EM. Synergy and other interactions in phytomedicines. *Phytomedicine*. 2001;8: 401–409.
95. Bravo L. Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. *Nutr Rev*. 1998;56: 317–333.
96. Manach C, Scalbert A, Morand C, Rémésy C, Jime L. Polyphenols: food sources and bioavailability 1,2. *Am Soc Clin Nutr*. 2004;79: 727–747.
97. Calixto JB. Efficacy, safety, quality control, marketing and regulatory guidelines for herbal medicines (phytotherapeutic agents). *Brazilian J Med Biol Res*. 2000;33: 179–189.
98. Cuzzolin L, Zaffani S, Benoni G. Safety implications regarding use of phytomedicines. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol*. Springer-Verlag; 2006;62: 37–42.
99. McKay DL, Blumberg JB. A Review of the Bioactivity of South African Herbal Teas: Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*). *Phyther Res*. 2007;21: 1–16.

100. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of *Cyclopia genistoides* (Honeybush) methanol extracts and relevant polyphenols. *J Agric Food Chem.* 2007;55: 4371–4381.
101. Muller CJF, Joubert E, Gabuza K, Beer D De, Fey SJ, Louw J. Assessment of the Antidiabetic Potential of an Aqueous Extract of Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*) in Streptozotocin and Obese Insulin Resistant Wistar Rats. In: Iraj Rasooli, editor. *Phytochemicals - Bioactivities and Impact on Health.* InTech; 2010. pp. 313–333.
102. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M. Honeybush (*Cyclopia* sp.) - A rich source of compounds with high antimutagenic properties. *Fitoterapia.* Elsevier B.V.; 2009;80: 3–11.
103. de Beer D, Schulze A, Joubert E, de Villiers A, Malherbe C, Stander M. Food Ingredient Extracts of *Cyclopia subternata* (Honeybush): Variation in Phenolic Composition and Antioxidant Capacity. *Molecules.* 2012;17: 14602–14624.
104. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Pawlowska J, Luczkiewicz P, Sowinski P, Witkowski J, *et al.* Isolation of xanthone and benzophenone derivatives from *Cyclopia genistoides* (L.) Vent. (honeybush) and their pro-apoptotic activity on synoviocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Fitoterapia.* Elsevier B.V.; 2013;90: 199–208.
105. Visser K, Zierau O, Macejová D, Goerl F, Muders M, Baretton GB, *et al.* The phytoestrogenic *Cyclopia* extract, SM6Met, increases median tumor free survival and reduces tumor mass and volume in chemically induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2016; 1–7.
106. Verhoog NJD. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of honeybush (*Cyclopia*). Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2006.
107. Mfenyana C, DeBeer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity and benchmarking against commercial phytoestrogen extracts. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2008;112: 74–86.
108. Mfenyana C. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2008.
109. Visser K, Mortimer M, Louw A. *Cyclopia* extracts act as ER $\alpha$  antagonists and ER $\beta$  agonists, *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *PLoS One.* 2013;8: 1–22.
110. Mortimer MF. Isolation and identification of compounds conferring phytoestrogenic activity to *Cyclopia* extracts. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2014.

## **Chapter 2: Literature Review**



## 2.1. Introduction

Plants have for centuries played a vital role in human health and wellbeing, not only as a source of shelter and food, but also for the treatment of various ailments and diseases [1–5]. Ancient civilisations developed phytomedical systems by observing nature and using a trial and error approach, through which they determined whether a plant was beneficial or toxic [1–3]. Some of these findings were documented and the knowledge passed on from generation to generation [6–11]. Ancient phytomedicine\* has formed the foundation upon which modern medicine is built, contributing to the discovery and development of numerous drugs [1–3,5,12–14].

The last few decades, medical and scientific research have made great strides in understanding the dynamics of health and the mechanisms of disease [15–18]. This increase in biological knowledge revealed the complexity of the human body, the fragility of its various intricate systems, and identified the multiple contributing factors which builds and shapes our physiological composition as humans [15–20].

As drug development progressed, the main focus shifted from using whole plant extracts towards identifying active ingredients, investigating their mechanisms of action, and using these active ingredients to our advantage in the fight against complex diseases, such as cancer [13,21,22]. But with new found information and techniques, came new challenges such as drug resistance, dangerous side effects and decreased drug efficacy, and this method of reductionism (as it is referred to in an interesting review article by Corning [16]), was revealed not to be the ideal approach in treating complex diseases [23–27].

---

\* Phytomedicine is also known as botanic medicine, herbal medicine or ethnomedicine [56,167,168]

The current study falls within the bigger scope of re-discovering the medicinal power of plants and whole plant extracts, since combination therapies, inspired by the unique mixture of phytochemicals in medicinal plants, have been shown to be more effective than monotherapies in combating complex or multifaceted diseases [28–33]. To narrow it down, the current study will focus on one specific plant of interest, *Cyclopia*, and its medicinal potential for combating estrogen related diseases, such as breast cancer. This indigenous South Africa plant has shown a variety of disease fighting properties, but the main interest of the current study is the phytoestrogenic activity of *Cyclopia*.

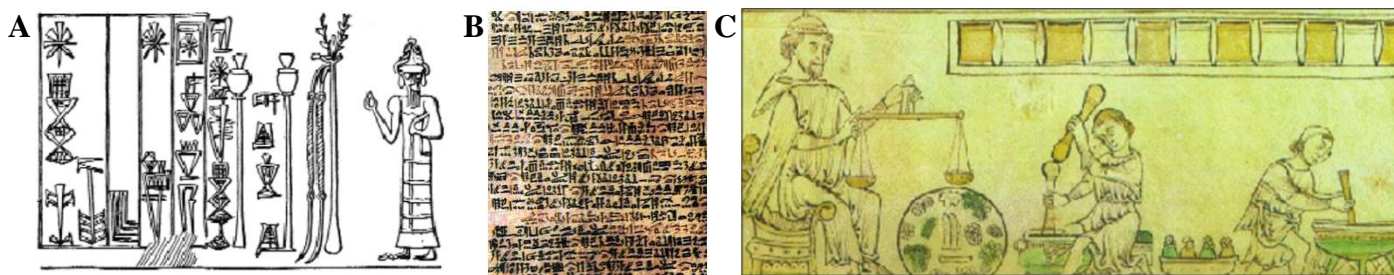
This literature review is divided into 5 sections: (1) the history and evolution of phytomedicine, (2) the concept of synergism (with specific reference to phytomedicine), (3) *Cyclopia*, (4) mechanism of action of phytoestrogens (with specific reference to the estrogen signalling pathway) and lastly (5) the major phenolic compounds in the *Cyclopia* SM6Met fraction.

## **2.2. History and evolution of phytomedicine**

### **2.2.1. Ancient traditional medicine**

The history of medicine is as old as mankind itself, and the earliest form of medicine was derived mainly from plants [3,4,9,34]. During pre-historical times, not much was known about the human body, and pre-historical civilisations relied strongly on nature, as well as their different religious/belief systems, for the treatment of various ailments and diseases [5,34]. Some cultures believed that diseases were caused by higher powers or spirits, and plants were not only used for treating physical ailments, but also in spiritual healing rituals [3,9,35–37].

Some of the oldest documentations of medicinal plants stem from ancient Egyptian, Mesopotamian and Greek traditions dating back to the 1600 BC (Figure 2.1) [9,37]. Clay tablets, scrolls and papyri gave insight into the herbal medicine used by these ancient groups, along with their discoveries regarding pathophysiology and the human anatomy [35,38,39]. A more rational approach to medicine arose and medical practices focused on the observation of symptoms and visible abnormalities, such as examining body fluids, listening to respiratory function and observing skin discoloration [35,38–40]. The Mesopotamians had two types of medical practitioners, the *ashipu*, who was responsible for diagnosis of ailments, and the *asu*, who was the specialist in herbal remedies [35]. The Egyptians were also considered to be excellent herbalists and the Ebers papyrus (dating from 1500 BC) contains 877 recipes and prescriptions for internal medicine, as well as skin and eye problems [3,39–41].



**Figure 2.1: Demonstrations and documentations of ancient medicinal practices. (A) representation of a Mesopotamian medical practitioner, (B) fragment of Ebers Papyrus, and (C) monks processing and weighing herbs [35,37].**

Furthermore, other traditional medical systems that arose independently in different parts of the world also had medicinal plants forming the centre of their medical practices. Some of these traditional medical systems include: traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) used in parts of Asia, Ayurveda used in parts of India, Native American traditional medicine used in North America, and different local systems in Africa (which strongly depends on demographic and different cultural beliefs) [2,5,8,41,42].

Ancient Chinese and Indian medicines had a more holistic approach to health and disease than the Egyptian, Mesopotamian and Greek systems, but were also known for their

extensive use of plant-based products [40,43]. They believed that disease was a result of an imbalance between the mind, body and spirit, and in order to restore balance and harmony, they used herbal remedies combined with physical and spiritual practices such as yoga, meditation and acupuncture [2,43]. The ancient texts of *Veda* describe the earliest use of medicinal plants in Ayurvedic medicine [2]. Likewise, the Chinese medicinal book, *Wu Shi Er Bing Fang*, consists of a list of approximately 250 natural agents and 150 combinatorial formulations for disease treatment [40]. Although ancient African traditional medicine (excluding traditional Egyptian medicine) is not as well documented compared to ancient phytomedicine from Europe and Asia, it is considered to be the most diverse of all medicine systems with influences from a variety of different cultures within Africa [2,44].

Since ancient times, various phytomedicinal books and manuscripts were published, describing and categorising the medicinal use of certain plants [35,37,38]. Dioscorides wrote the book, *De Materia Medica* (circa 77AD), wherein he categorised plants according to their physical appearance, locality, method of preparation, and medicinal properties [9,37,41]. His work provided the foundation for pharmacognosy, the study of drugs originating from plants or natural products [9,41]. Other examples of phytomedical books written during the middle ages included *Avicenna* (980-1037), *Herbarium Apuleius* (480-1050), *The Leech Book of Bald* (925), *Physicians of Myddvai* (1250), *Herbal* (Brunfels), *Herbal* (Brock) and *Herbal* (Mattioli) (1500-1577) [35,37]. There was, however, still a gap in knowledge regarding the plant's active components, mode of actions and the potential side effects the use of medicinal plants may have over time.

### **2.2.2. Introduction of science and development of modern medicine**

The 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> century provided the stepping stones for modern medicine with the discovery of various physiological structures and functions (e.g. circulation of blood), the

increase in theoretical knowledge regarding diseases such as scurvy, rabies and smallpox, the introduction of opium and digitalis (from poppy seeds and foxgloves, respectively), and the invention of the microscope [3,5,35,38,45]. The field of pharmacognosy was also established during this period, since the demand for compound drugs increased [9,35,41]. Since the 18<sup>th</sup> century, phytomedicine moved in a more scientific systematic direction in order to identify active compounds and avoid past problem such as toxicity [40].

The most significant developments of modern medicine occurred during the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> century. Progress during this period include the introduction of diagnostic techniques and new medical tools (X-ray, stethoscope, thermometer, ophthalmoscope and laryngoscope), better understanding of and novel detection methods for diseases such as cholera, tuberculosis, diphtheria and typhoid, isolation of alkaloids and glycosides from plants, as well as discovery of active substances such as tannins, vitamins, saponosides and etheric oils [38,41,46,47].

As medicine and related techniques evolved, so did the use of medicinal plants, and the focus shifted from using whole plant extracts to identifying and isolating active compounds in medicinal plants. Past challenges and gaps in phytomedicine knowledge opened up research opportunities, and evidence based research became the pioneers of drug development [45]. The 20<sup>th</sup> century was also marked as the beginning of the modern pharmaceutical industry, with the introduction of various synthetic versions of natural products [3,38,45].

The continued progress of modern medicine in the 21<sup>st</sup> century was reinforced by the improvements of high-tech screening and analytical methods such as high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), mass spectrometry (MS), and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), which, together with collaborations from various scientific fields including genomics, proteomics, metabolomics and bioinformatics, accelerated the identification, characterisation

and isolation of active compounds from medicinal plants [48–50]. However, in the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, most pharmaceutical companies moved away from natural products in favour of combinatorial and synthetic chemistry, which were able to reduce the development time of drugs as well as the complexity of the drugs developed, and provide a more comprehensive understanding of drug interactions [50,51].

Despite the scientific advances made in drug discovery, 25% of current modern drugs still originate directly or indirectly from medicinal plants, showing that plants continue to play an important role in the development of modern medicine [49,52]. In addition, during the last decade a gradual shift was observed from mono-drug therapies to multi-target therapies and multi-drug combinations, with an increased use of traditional and non-conventional medicine incorporated into modern medical practices [1,53–56]. A review article by Li *et al.*[57], refers to this transition as the Easternization of Western medicine, and proposes that this shift may help discover novel drug interactions and bridge the gap between traditional and modern medicine.

### **2.2.3. Traditional medicine in the 21<sup>st</sup> century**

Looking back on how medicine has changed and evolved over time, it is apparent that medicinal plants and traditional knowledge have formed the foundation of modern medicine, and that even with the strides made in the medical and pharmaceutical industry, 65-80% of rural communities worldwide (predominantly in India, China, Africa and parts of South America) still rely on traditional medicine and medicinal plants as their primary source of health care [44,50,51,57–59]. The use of traditional medicine practices in the 21<sup>st</sup> century is fuelled by poverty, lack of pharmaceutical manufacturing capacity, and limited access to modern medicine [52,60,61]. Other factors like accessibility/availability, cultural influences, lack of effective treatments, and the use of phytomedicine for the relief of side effects caused

by modern medicine (e.g. chemotherapy, antiretroviral drugs, and malaria treatments), also play a role [44,51,59].

Scientific studies on the medicinal potential of plants are limited, with only 10-14% of all plant species being used for medicinal purposes [59,62]. However, some countries (such as Nigeria, China, India, and the USA), have made an effort to invest in phytomedical research, and have sparked a renewed interest in medicinal plants used in traditional medicine [62,63]. A paradigm shift is also occurring towards investigating whole plant extracts or phytomixtures, instead of focussing on single bioactive phytochemicals, which have, until recently, formed the majority of publications in the field of phytomedicine [54–56,63].

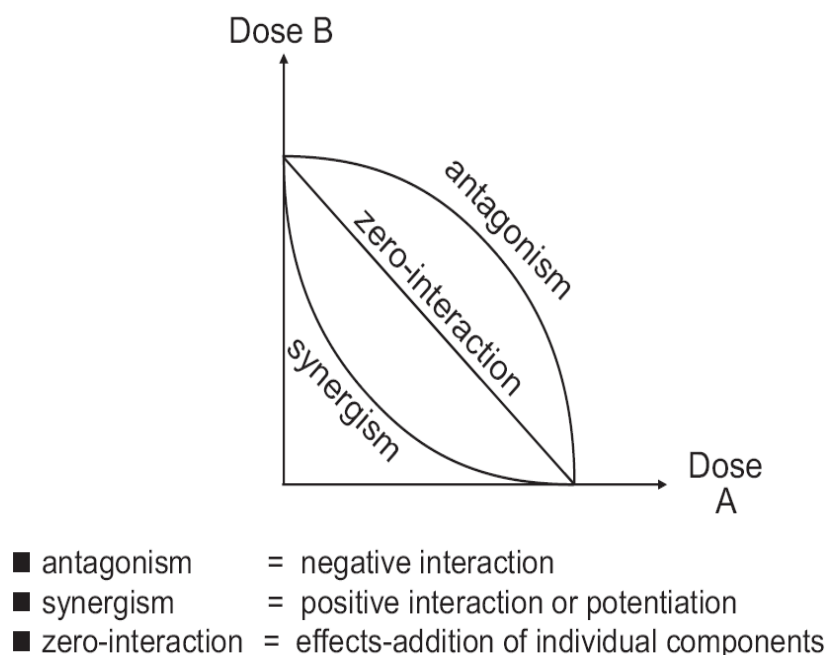
An article by Gwynn *et al.* [64], asks the very important question: “How can future opportunities be derived from traditional medicine?” Although there are many hurdles ahead for the integration of phytomedicine into modern medicine, combining traditional knowledge and modern techniques, could perhaps be the answer to our challenges in modern medicine regarding decreases in effectiveness, drug resistance, toxicity, and combating complex diseases such as AIDS and cancer [14,62,64,65]. In an age of advanced communication and technology, integrating the knowledge of medicinal plants obtained from traditional practitioners, may potentially help identify medicinal plants for investigation faster, which in turn may help reduce the selecting and screening process [62,64]. Some traditional practitioners also have extensive experience in combining different phytochemicals or herbs in order to enhance the desired medicinal effects (also referred to as synergism) or fight disease on multiple levels [42,62].

### 2.3. The concept (theory and practice) of synergism

The higher effectiveness of whole plant extracts and multi-compound combinations, in comparison to single plant derived active compounds, is thought to be due to the synergistic effects of the mixture of different bio-active and supporting constituents [56,66–68]. The supporting compounds themselves could be pharmacologically inactive, but contribute to the stability, solubility and/or absorption rate of the active compounds [68–70]. In addition, the multi-target potential of medicinal plant extracts may also be due to the complex mixture of different bio-active and supporting phytochemicals [56,68].

Among the first to define the concept of synergy, specifically pharmacological synergy, was Berenbaum in the 1980's [71]. He developed the isobole method, which is considered to be one of the easier methods to test for synergism, since it is a demonstrative method that it is also independent of the mechanisms of action [68,71,72]. The dose of the two individual compounds being compared that gives half maximal response ( $EC_{50}$ ) is plotted separately on respectively the x and y axes of a graph. If the  $EC_{50}$  of combinations of the two compounds are plotted and connected on the graph and form a straight line, it will represent a combined or additive effect, meaning that there is no interaction between the two compounds, but that the combined effect is the sum of the two separate effects. If, however, there is an interaction between the two compounds, the “iso-effect” curve will be observed (Figure 2.3). Synergism is represented by a concave curve, with the combined effect of the two compounds being greater than the sum of the two separate effects. Antagonism is represented by a convex curve and the effect of the combination is less than the sum of the two compounds.





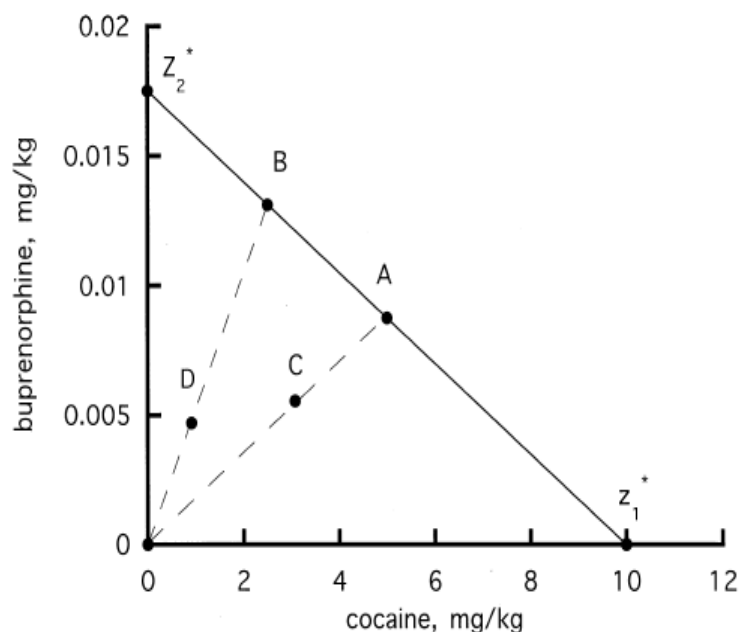
**Figure 2.3: Isoboles for antagonism, synergism and zero-interaction as obtained from Wagner *et al.*, [73].**

A different and less labour intensive approach to Berenbaums' isobole method would be using fixed ratio combinations. In a study done by Tallarida *et al.* [74], investigating synergism between cocaine and buprenorphine, two fixed-ratio combinations (1:1 and 1:3) were used to test for synergy. Similar to the isobole method, the  $EC_{50}$  concentrations of the two individual drugs being compared were plotted separately on the x and y axes of the graph and a line drawn through the two points. This line represents the theoretically additive combination doses. The additive  $EC_{50}$  values ( $z_{add}$ ) are calculated from the individual drug  $EC_{50}$  concentrations according to the fixed-ratio combination used and plotted on the straight line, as can be observed in Figure 2.4 as point A (ratio of 1:1) and B (ratio of 1:3). Equation 1 and 2 (below) are used to calculate the additive values ( $z_{add}$ ) and standard error (SE) for the 1:3 ratio. These equations may just be adjusted to apply to any ratio. The two drugs were then combined according to the fixed-ratios and the  $EC_{50}$  values of the combinations were determined. The individual drug concentrations in the combinations, at the  $EC_{50}$  value, were then plotted on the graph as seen in Figure 2.4 at point C (ratio of 1:1) and D (ratio of 1:3). The effect of the combined drug concentrations were less than the expected additive

concentrations, and therefore represent a synergistic effect. To determine synergism, it is therefore not necessary to determine multiple drug combination  $EC_{50}$ s to draw the curve as seen in Figure 2.3, [74].

$$z_{\text{add}} = (0.25 \times 10) + (0.75 \times 0.0175) = 2.51 \quad [1]$$

$$SE(z_{\text{add}}) = (0.25 \times 1.14)^2 + (0.75 \times 0.00438)^2 = 0.285 \quad [2]$$



**Figure 2.4: Isobologram showing synergism for the two fixed ratio mixtures of cocaine: buprenorphine as demonstrated in Tallarida *et al.*, [74].** The  $EC_{50}$  of cocaine is 10 mg/kg (plotted on x-axis) and the  $EC_{50}$  of buprenorphine is 0.0175 mg/kg (plotted on y-axis). At point A, the drug ratio is 1:1 (5 mg/kg of cocaine: 0.00875 mg/kg of buprenorphine) and at point B the drug ratio is 1:3 (2.5 mg/kg of cocaine: 0.013125 mg/kg of buprenorphine). Point C and D represent the synergistic effect of the combined drugs as a ratio of 1:1 and 1:3, respectively. See text for further details.

Some of the advantages of synergy in phytotherapy or drug development include the multi-target effect, due to the presence of various active and supporting compounds, which in turn, also inhibits drug resistance [55,56,69,73,75,76]. Subsequently, a decrease in toxicity and fewer side effects are also reported, since lower concentrations are needed to exert an effect [56,69,73,75]. The focus of some drug combination studies are not only to inhibit the mechanisms contributing to a specific disease, but also to activate protective and repair mechanisms to promote self-healing and prevent recurrence of the specific disease [54,76]. In

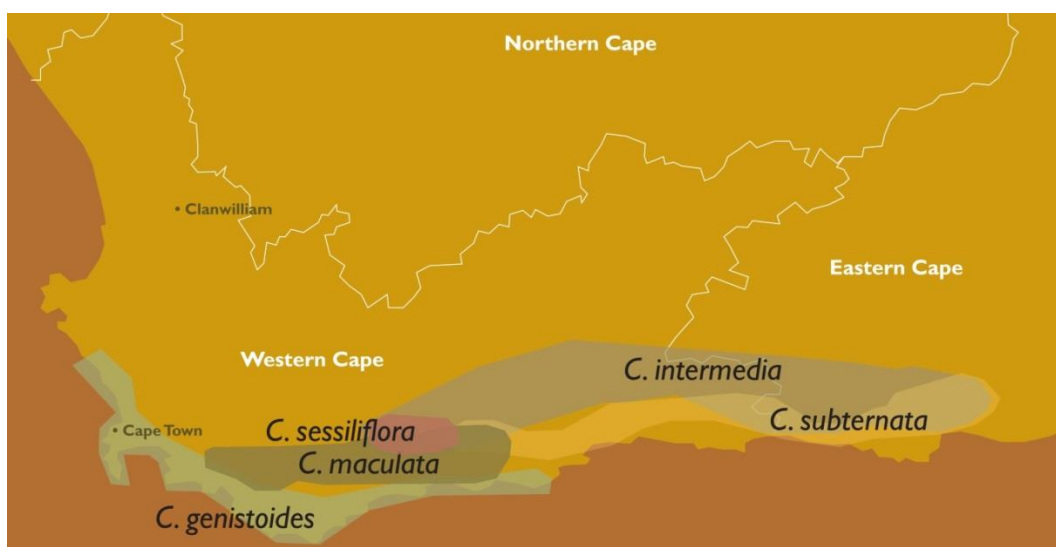
a review article by Wagner *et al.* [73], the authors provide various examples of successful phytopharmaceutical drug combinations, including Iberogast<sup>®</sup> which is comprised of nine plant extracts and is able to combat functional dysplasia and motility-related intestinal disorders on multiple levels, the effectiveness of *Hypericum* compounds (Hypericin together with Epicatechin, Procyanidin, Hyperosid and/or Rutin) as an antidepressant compared to synthetic psychopharmacological drugs such as Imipramin, Flumazenil, Fluoxetin and Amitriptylin, and the efficacy of combination of the antimicrobial Amphotericin B together with a grape seed extract (*Vitis vinifera*) to double the survival rate of *Candida albicans*-infected mice compared to Amphotericin B alone.

Within the scope of the current study, combinations of different phytoestrogens, at concentrations that may be reached physiologically, have previously been shown to enhance anticancer effects by exerting their effects through many different molecular mechanisms [69]. For example, Kumar *et al.* [30] investigated the synergistic effects of three phytoestrogens (genistein, quercetin and biochanin A) and found that these phytoestrogens in a select combination (1:1:1 at 8.33 $\mu$ M each) had a more potent inhibitory effect on androgen-responsive prostate cancer cell growth *in vitro* than the higher concentration (25 $\mu$ M) of the individual phytoestrogens on their own.

## **2.4. *Cyclopia* (Honeybush)**

The genus *Cyclopia* (family: Fabaceae, tribe: Podalyrieae), more commonly known as honeybush due to its sweet honey-scented aroma, forms part of the indigenous South African fynbos biome and is predominantly found in the Eastern and Western Cape provinces (Figure 2.2) [77–80]. There are approximately 24 species of *Cyclopia* in the wild of which a few are commercially cultivated as herbal tea including, but not limited to, ‘kustee’ (*C. genistoides*), ‘vleitee’ (*C. subternata* & *C. maculata*), ‘bergtee’ (*C. intermedia*), and ‘Heidelbergtee’ (*C.*

*sessiliflora*) [77,78,81–86]. This woody leguminous scrub consists of small trifoliate leaves, with the leaf shape and size differing between species, and distinctive bright yellow flowers (Figure 2.5) [78,80,81]. The stem, leaves and flowers of the plant are harvested for the manufacture of fermented<sup>†</sup> and unfermented (green) honeybush tea [78,81,83,84,86,87]. Apart from its sweet aroma and taste, honeybush tea is also low in tannins and contains no caffeine, contributing to its increased popularity as a healthy beverage [77,78,83,88].

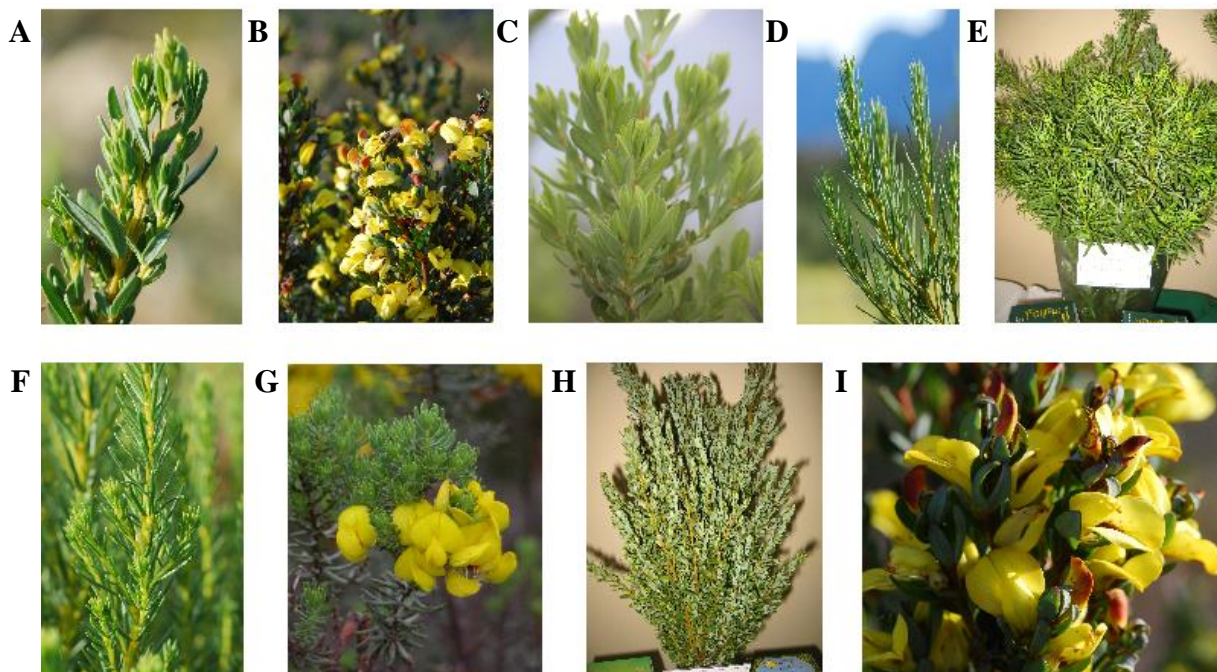


**Figure 2.2: Distribution of some *Cyclopia* species in Western and Eastern Cape region [89].**

The use of *Cyclopia*, together with *Aspalathus linearis* (rooibos) and *Agathosma betulina* (buchu) by humans has a long history, and anecdotal evidence suggest that these indigenous South African plants were used by native inhabitants, such as the Khoi-San, as traditional medicinal teas to treat various ailments including digestive disorders (loss of appetite, nausea, spastic colon, colic), respiratory infections and disorders (asthma, chronic catarrh, pulmonary tuberculosis), and to help ease arthritis pain, and stimulate milk production in lactating women [77,80,85,90–92]. Gradually, the medicinal role of *Cyclopia* became less important while interest in the agriculture and agro-processing industry grew [80,93]. The honeybush industry is still young and in its developmental stage, but it has established itself in the herbal

<sup>†</sup> Fermentation of tea entails temperature-controlled oxidation of the plant material to enhance flavour and contribute to the renowned golden brown colour of classical tea [78,81,169].

tea market [77,80]. Currently, 100-175 tons of *Cyclopia* is exported annually, mainly to the United States and Europe (the United Kingdom, Germany, the Netherlands and Poland) [86,94,95].



**Figure 2.5: The leaves and flowers of different *Cyclopia* species.** (A) *Cyclopia subternata* leaves, (B) *Cyclopia subternata* flowers, (C) *Cyclopia intermedia* leaves, (D) *Cyclopia maculata* leaves, (E) *Cyclopia longifolia* leaves, (F) *Cyclopia genistoides* leaves, (G) *Cyclopia genistoides* flowers, (H) *Cyclopia sessiliflora* leaves and (I) *Cyclopia sessiliflora* flowers [89].

A global shift in health-conscious lifestyle and food choices have resulted in a renewed interest in the potential health benefits and medicinal properties of *Cyclopia* [77,90,96,97]. The 2015 Nielsen Global Health and Wellness survey showed that 88% of consumers worldwide (Latin America (94%), Asia-Pacific (93%), Africa/Middle East (92%), Europe (79%) and North America (80%)) say they are willing to pay more for food that have proven health attributes [98]. This health-conscious trend, together with growing scientific research regarding health benefits of herbal teas, could create a possible new market for *Cyclopia* as a source of nutraceutical and potential pharmaceutical phytochemicals, especially since this indigenous plant has shown a vast variety of health promoting and disease fighting properties including, but not limited to, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, -diabetic and -mutagenic properties as well as chemo-preventive or anti-cancer activity [28,77,78,93,99–105].

### 2.4.1. Health benefits of *Cyclopia*

The bioactivity of the *Cyclopia* species has been investigated and demonstrated in various research papers, and *Cyclopia* extracts have shown promising results in *in vitro*, *in vivo* and *ex vivo* studies.

One of *Cyclopia*'s most prominent beneficial traits is its proven antioxidant activity. In a study by Dube *et al.* [106], the antioxidant capacity of different *Cyclopia* extracts were investigated using three methods: Oxygen Radical Absorbance Capacity (ORAC) assay, Trolox Equivalent Antioxidant Capacity (TEAC) assay and Ferric Reducing Ability of Plasma (FRAP) assay, and all the *Cyclopia* extracts, to some extent, displayed antioxidant behaviour by either scavenging free radicals, intercepting oxidation of oxidizable molecules, or preventing formation of reactive oxygen species (ROS). Similar antioxidant results were found in various other studies where different *Cyclopia* extracts and related phenolic compounds were able to inhibit  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ -induced microsomal lipid peroxidation, capture free 2,2'-azinobis-(3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid) (ABTS•+) radicals, and decrease oxidised glutathione (GSSG) in rat livers, thereby increasing the GSH/GSSG ratio, thus resulting in more effective cell resistance against oxidative stress [84,93,94,99,107].

*Cyclopia*'s antioxidant properties go hand in hand with its anti-mutagenic and anti-cancer activity, since oxidative stress and free radicals have been linked to DNA damage and cancer progression [108]. Therefore, it is no surprise that *Cyclopia* extracts also displayed protective activity against the pro-carcinogens, aflatoxin B1 and 2-acetylaminofluorene (2-AAF), in the Salmonella mutagenicity assay, inhibited chemically induced skin tumour formation in ICR (Institute of Cancer Research) mice, and reduced azoxymethane (AOM) induced cell proliferation in the colonic mucosa of rats [93,99,107,109,110].

In addition to *Cyclopia*'s antioxidant, anti-mutagenic and anti-cancer activity, this indigenous plant also displayed anti-diabetic activity [78,107,111,112]. In a study by Muller *et al.* [111], *Cyclopia intermedia* extracts effectively reduced plasma glucose levels in Streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetic rats, as well as normalizing blood glucose levels and reducing plasma cholesterol levels in hyperglycaemic, high fat diet-induced OBIR rats.

Another key characteristic of this multi-faceted plant, which forms the basis of the current study and the focus of our research group, is *Cyclopia*'s phytoestrogenic activity. Verhoog *et al.* [113–115], was one of the first to describe the phytoestrogenic activity of different *Cyclopia* species (*C. intermedia*, *C. sessiliflora*, *C. genistoides* and *C. subternata*), followed by Mfenyana *et al.* [116,117], Visser *et al.* [102,105,118], and Mortimer *et al.* [28,119], who showed estrogen receptor (ER) subtype selectivity of *Cyclopia* fractions and related phytocompounds, inhibition of E<sub>2</sub>-induced breast cancer cell proliferation *in vitro*, delayed ER $\alpha$  induced uterine growth in an immature rat uterotrophic model, and reduced tumour formation in a *N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosourea (MNU)-induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis model (as discussed in Chapter 1).

To fully understand the importance of phytoestrogens, the next section will cover the mechanism of actions of phytoestrogens, as well as give a brief overview of the estrogen receptor signalling pathway.

## 2.5. Mechanisms of action of phytoestrogens

Phytoestrogens are plant derived non-steroidal compounds with structural similarity to 17- $\beta$  estradiol (Figure 2.5.1), and therefore can cause estrogenic, anti-estrogenic or selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM)-like effects in animals and humans [120–122]. They are also referred to as dietary estrogens, since they are present in a variety of fruits, vegetables, grains, and seeds [121,123]. There are different classes of phytoestrogens including **isoflavones** (legumes and soybean products), **coumestans** (bean sprouts and fodder crops), **stilbenoids** (fruits such as grapes) and **lignans** (whole grains, fruits such as berries, pears and apples, and sunflower seeds) [121,124–127].

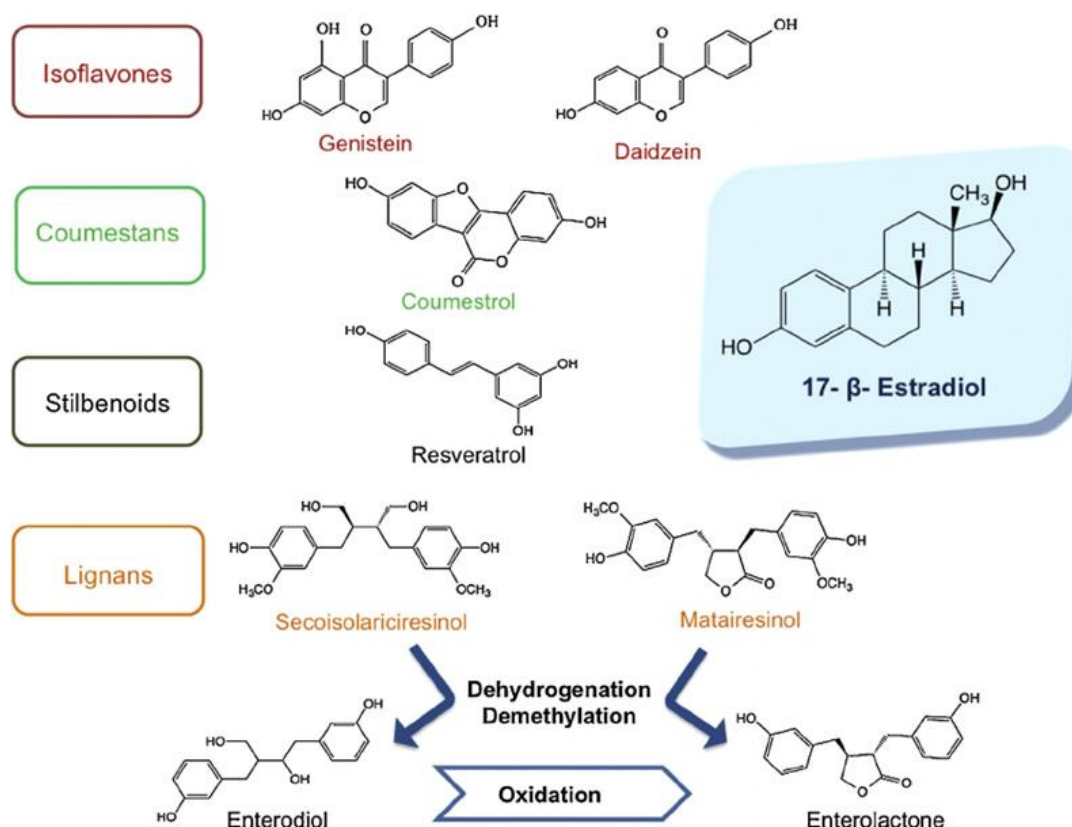


Figure 2.5. Chemical structure similarity between the different classes of phytoestrogens (isoflavones, coumestans, stilbenoids, and lignans) and the endogenous female estrogen (17- $\beta$ -estradiol). Figure obtained from Moreira *et al.* [127].



The health potential of phytoestrogen-rich food is supported by epidemiology, in vitro and in vivo studies [120]. The occurrence of, for example, breast cancer in Asian and Eastern European countries, which predominantly consume a plant-based diet high in phytoestrogens, is lower than in Western countries, which consumes a diet high in animal based products [120,126,128]. Specifically, some of the phytoestrogens in soy, like genistein, have in various studies displayed anti-proliferative activity in both ER negative breast cancer cell lines (MDA 231 and MDA 435) and in ER positive MCF-7 cells [120,129].

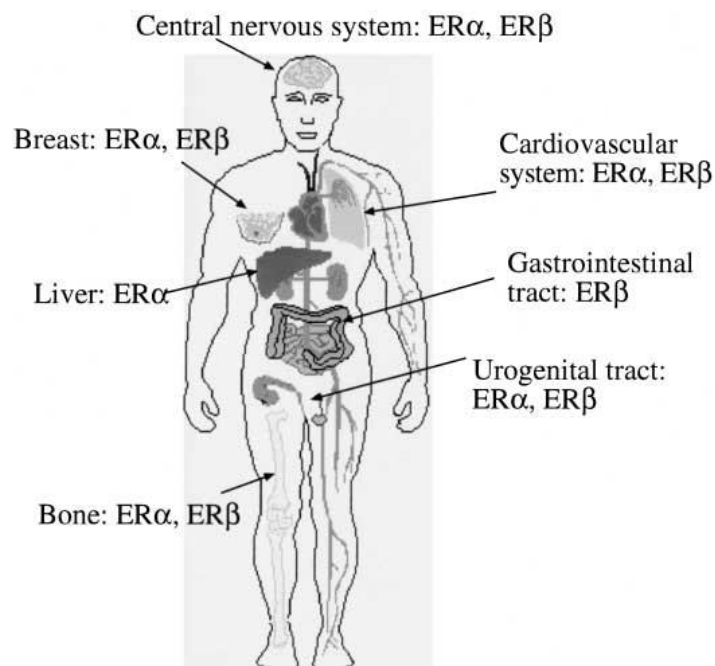
Due to the favourable outcome of several studies, phytoestrogens are considered to be a safer and more natural alternative to synthetic estrogens used in HRT, with the same benefits as HRT (relief of menopausal symptoms, prevention of cardiovascular disease and osteoporosis) but with a lower risk of developing estrogen related cancers [120,126,130]. These potentially beneficial effects of phytoestrogens have resulted in a global increase in the consumption of phytoestrogen rich food and products [126]. However, the risks or side effects of phytoestrogens have not yet been clearly established. A review article by Patisaul *et al.* [131], describing the pros and cons of phytoestrogens, reveals the two-faced characteristic of some phytoestrogens. Genistein is an excellent examples of this, since this phyto compound has shown a biphasic response with agonist, instead of antagonist, effects at low concentrations and consequently, causing, rather than preventing, proliferation of cancer cells [124,129,132,133]. This example emphasizes the importance of fully understanding how phyto compounds exert their effects [124,132,133].

The main structural feature of phytoestrogens are their phenolic rings together with hydroxyl groups, which is a prerequisite for compounds to bind to the ERs [126,127,134]. Phytoestrogens are, therefore, able to mimic endogenous estrogens and mediate their effects through the same estrogen signalling pathway [120]. Apart from the ability of phytoestrogens to bind to the ERs, they can also activate other receptors, including serotonergic-, IGF-1-,

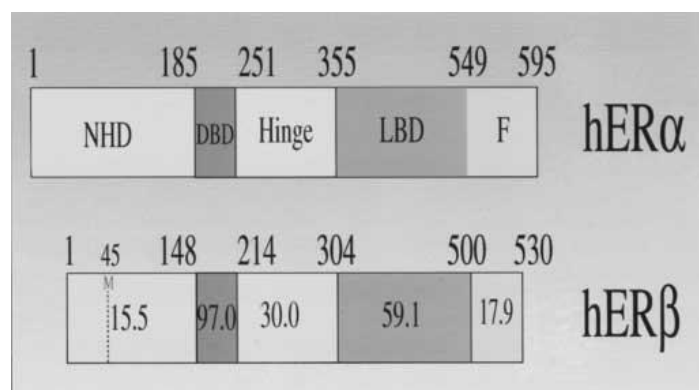
aryl hydrocarbon-, and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors, act like antioxidants by binding to free radicals, and affect signalling pathways important for cell survival and apoptosis including, but not limited to, tyrosine kinase, cAMP/protein kinase A, and MAP (ERK1,2, p38) kinase pathways [30,123,135]. The multifaceted characteristics of phytochemicals make them alluring candidates for cancer therapy development. For the purpose of the current study, however, we focus specifically on the estrogen signalling pathway.

### **2.5.1. Estrogen signalling pathway**

The biological effects of estrogenic molecules are mediated through two intracellular receptors, ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  [136–138]. These receptors are ligand-dependent transcriptional factors which are expressed in specific target tissues (Figure 2.6) [136–139]. The structural (A to F region) and functional (DNA binding, ligand binding, activation domains: AF-1 and AF-2) domains between ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  differ (Figure 2.7), which results in these subtypes having different physiological functions [136,140–143]. In terms of breast cancer, ER $\alpha$  is known to induce cell proliferation, whereas ER $\beta$  has shown anti-proliferative activity by antagonising ER $\alpha$ , thus creating a balance between opposite forces (as described by Heldring *et al.*) [137,143–146].



**Figure 2.6: Distribution of ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  in the human body, as demonstrated by Gustafsson [139].**



**Figure 2.7: The structure representation of human ER $\alpha$  (top) and ER $\beta$  (bottom). Number 1 (left) is the N-terminal, the numbers above the receptor illustration indicates the number of amino acids, and the numbers within the receptor illustration (ER $\beta$ ) indicates the % homology between the respective domains of the two ERs [139].**

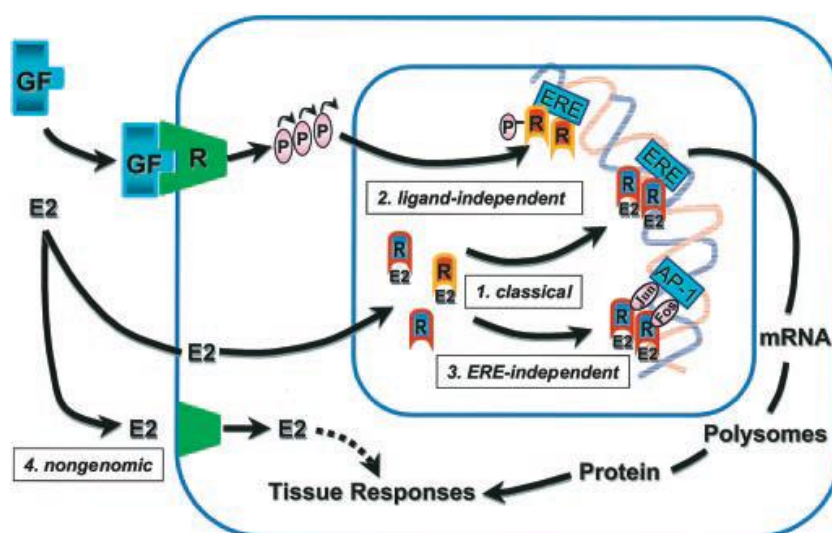
There are four main ER signalling pathways including the (1) classical ligand-dependent, (2) ligand-independent, (3) estrogen response element (ERE)-independent, and (4) nongenomic (cell-surface signalling) pathways (Figure 2.8) [138]. When estrogenic molecules reach their target cells, they diffuse across the cellular membrane and bind to the ER in the cytoplasm, forming a ligand-ER complex, thereby activating and causing a conformational change of the ER [136–138]. Pathway 1, 3 and 4 are ligand-dependent, and will be discussed first.

Pathway 1: In the classical ligand-dependent pathway, the ligand-ER complex binds to the EREs in the promoter region of target genes, regulating the transcription of these genes [136–138,147].

Pathway 3: The ERE-independent, also referred to as the tethered ligand dependent pathway, involves indirect binding of the ligand-ER complex to the promoter region of genes that do not contain EREs, by tethering to other transcription factors, such as Fos/Jun, and thereby influencing the regulation of these gene [136–138,147].

Pathway 4: In the non-genomic pathway, the estrogenic molecule binds to a membrane-bound ER, activating enzymes, such as phosphatases and kinases. These affect membrane permeability, which this in turn results in rapid physiological changes [136–138,148].

Pathway 2: In contrast to the other signalling pathways, which are all ligand dependent, the ligand-independent pathway involves the phosphorylation of the ER by kinases, activating the ER via other signalling pathways (e.g. growth factor signalling) [136–138,148,149].



**Figure 2.8:** The four main ER signalling pathways including the (1) classical ligand-dependent, (2) ligand independent, (3) estrogen response element (ERE)-independent, and (4) nongenomic (cell-surface) signalling pathways, as obtained from Hall *et al.* [138].

## 2.6. Major phenolic compounds in *Cyclopia* SM6Met fraction

As discussed in Chapter 1, the current study is built on the foundation of the findings from Verhoog *et al.* [113–115], Mfenyana *et al.* [116,117], Visser *et al.* [102,105,118] and Mortimers *et al.* [28,119]. *Cyclopia*, specifically the SM6Met extract and F3 fraction, like most other plants, consists of a variety of phytochemicals, of which the major phenolic compounds quantified are shown in (Table 1). However, the current study only focusses on the 7 major phenolic compound identified and quantified in the ER beta agonist fraction (F3), of SM6Met. The phenolic compounds used in the current study were, however, purchased, and not isolated from *Cyclopia*.

**Table 1: Major phenolic compounds quantified in the *Cyclopia* SM6Met extract [28,119].**

Polyphenols	Compound class	SM6Met	F3
Mangiferin	Xanthone	1.899	11.565
Isomangiferin	Xanthone	0.645	4.016
<i>p</i> -Coumaric acid	Hydroxycinnamic acid	co-elution <sup>b</sup>	0.570
Luteolin-7-O-rutinoside (scolymoside)	Flavone	1.289	7.669
Luteolin	Flavone	0.040	0.205
Protocatechuic acid	Hydroxybenzoic acid	0.113	0.647
Iriflophenone-glc	Benzophenone	0.669	0.092
Aspalathin-glc	Flavone	0.700	nd <sup>c</sup>
Eriodictyol-7-O-rutinoside (eriocitrin)	Flavanone	0.846	nd <sup>c</sup>
Phloretin-diglc	Dihydrochalcone	1.278	nd <sup>c</sup>
Hesperetin-7-O-rutinoside (hesperidin)	Flavanone	2.049	nd <sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Gram polyphenols per 100 gram dried plant extract

<sup>b</sup> *p*-Coumaric acid co-elutes with aspalathin-glc where present; this means that the concentration cannot be determined accurately

<sup>c</sup> Not detected

It has been shown in literature that all 7 major phenolic compounds in F3 possess potential pharmaceutical characteristics including, but not limited to, antioxidant, anticancer, antibacterial and/or antidiabetic activity [100,150–160]. Of these 7 compounds, only 2

(luteolin and mangiferin) have phytoestrogenic activity [158,161–163]. Even so, the contribution of the other 5 compounds should not be dismissed, since, as discussed previously, the inactive (non-estrogenic) compounds might support the active (estrogenic) compounds by contributing to the stability, solubility and/or absorption rate of the active compounds [68–70].

## 2.7. Conclusion

It is apparent from reviewing the current literature that medicinal plant and related phytochemicals, have provided us with an endless source of inspiration, information and opportunities [8,50,164–166]. The title from an article by Pandey *et al.* [8]: "Phytomedicine: An ancient approach turning into future potential source of therapeutics", perfectly describes the historical transition of phytomedicine, since even though medicine has evolved dramatically over the decades with the introduction and development of evidence-based science and related techniques, traditional medicine and medicinal plants still remain a vital source of treatment in some parts of the world and may herald the new pharmaceuticals of the 21<sup>st</sup> century [44,50,51,57–59].

*Cyclopia*, an indigenous South Africa plant used in the past as traditional medicine by the Khoi-San, has regained popularity in the phytomedical and nutraceutical industry, due to its multifaceted medicinal properties. *Cyclopia* extracts have shown promising properties in *in vitro*, *in vivo* and *ex vivo* studies, which includes phytoestrogenic, antioxidant, anti-diabetic, anti-inflammatory and anti-mutagenic activity [86,93,100,103–105,115]. It is apparent from these findings, that *Cyclopia* mediates its desired effects via multi-target mechanisms, potentially due to the complex composition of different phytochemicals in the plant. It has recently been shown in our research group that the ER $\beta$ -specific activity of SM6Met cannot be attributed to any of the individual major phenolic compounds identified and quantified in

F3, and therefore the current study aims to investigate the possible combinatorial effects of these compounds [28].

## 2.8. References

1. Fabricant DS, Farnsworth NR. The value of plants used in traditional medicine for drug discovery. *Environ Health Perspect.* 2001;109: 69–75.
2. Gurib-Fakim A. Medicinal plants: Traditions of yesterday and drugs of tomorrow. *Mol Aspects Med.* 2006;27: 1–93.
3. Ng R. *History of Drug Discovery and Development. Second. Drugs: From Discovery to Approval.* John Wiley & Sons, Inc; 2009.
4. Schmidt B, Ribnicky DM, Poulev A, Logendra S, Cefalu WT, Raskin I. A natural history of botanical therapeutics. *Metabolism.* 2008;57: S3–S9.
5. Mamedov N. Medicinal Plants Studies: History, Challenges and Prospective. *Med Aromat Plants.* 2012;1: 1–2.
6. Hoareau L, Dasilva EJ. Medicinal plants: a re-emerging health aid. *Electron J Biotechnol.* 1999;2: 56–70.
7. Okigbo RN, Anuagasi CL, Amadi JE. Advances in selected medicinal and aromatic plants indigenous to Africa. *J Med Plants Res.* 2009;3: 86–95.
8. Pandey M, Debnath M, Gupta S, Chikara SK. Phytomedicine: An ancient approach turning into future potential source of therapeutics. *J Pharmacogn Phyther.* 2011;3: 27–37.
9. Ferreira TS, Moreira CZ, Cária NZ, Victoriano G, SILVA Jr WF, Magalhães JC. Phytotherapy: an introduction to its history, use and application. *Rev Bras Plantas Med. Sociedade Brasileira de Plantas Medicinai;* 2014;16: 290–298.
10. Shikov AN, Pozharitskaya ON, Makarov VG, Wagner H, Verpoorte R, Heinrich M. Medicinal Plants of the Russian Pharmacopoeia; their history and applications. *J Ethnopharmacol.* 2014;154: 481–536.
11. Phungula K V. Studies towards the development of African phytomedicines from *Combretum apiculatum* and *Galenia africana*. Masters dissertation. University of the Free State. 2015.
12. Raskin I, Ribnicky DM, Komarnytsky S, Ilic N, Poulev A, Borisjuk N, *et al.* Plants and human health in the twenty-first century. 2002;20: 522–531.

13. Balunas MJ, Kinghorn DA. Drug discovery from medicinal plants. *Life Sci.* 2005;78: 431–441.
14. Corson TW, Crews CM. Molecular Understanding and Modern Application of Traditional Medicines: Triumphs and Trials. *Cell.* 2007;130: 769–774.
15. Bircher J. Towards a dynamic definition of health and disease. *Med Heal Care Philos.* 2005;8: 335–341.
16. Corning PA. “The synergism hypothesis”: On the concept of synergy and its role in the evolution of complex systems. *J Soc Evol Syst.* 1998;21: 133–172.
17. Spillman WB, Robertson JL, Huckle WR, Govindan BS, Meissner KE. Complexity, fractals, disease time, and cancer. *Phys Rev.* 2004;70: 1–12.
18. Vandamme D, Fitzmaurice W, Kholodenko B, Kolch W. Systems medicine: helping us understand the complexity of disease. *Q J Med.* 2013;106: 891–895.
19. Wilson T, Holt T. Complexity science: Complexity and clinical care. *BMJ.* 2001;325: 685–688.
20. Thornton-Wells TA, Moore JH, Haines JL. Genetics, statistics and human disease: analytical retooling for complexity. *TRENDS Genet.* 2004;20: 640–647.
21. Corson TW, Crews CM. Molecular Understanding and Modern Application of Traditional Medicines: Triumphs and Trials. *Cell.* 2007;130: 769–774.
22. Drews J. Drug Discovery: A Historical Perspective. *Science (80- ).* 2000;287: 1960–1964.
23. Björn I, Bäckström T. Drug related negative side-effects is a common reason for poor compliance in hormone replacement therapy. *Maturitas.* 1999;32: 77–86.
24. Cordell G a. Natural products in drug discovery - Creating a new vision. *Phytochem Rev.* 2002;1: 261–273.
25. Gottesman MM. Mechanisms of cancer drug resistance. *Annu Rev Med.* 2002;53: 615–627.
26. Seguin L, Desgrosellier JS, Weis SM, Cheresch DA. Integrins and cancer: regulators of cancer stemness, metastasis, and drug resistance. *Trends Cell Biol.* 2015;25: 234–240.
27. Holohan C, Van Schaeybroeck S, Longley DB, Johnston PG. Cancer drug resistance: an evolving paradigm. *Nat Rev Cancer.* 2013;13: 714–726.
28. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia*



- nutraceutical extract, *SM6Met*. *PLoS One*. 2015;10: 1–22.
29. Möttönen T, Hannonen P, Leirisalo-Repo M, Nissilä M, Kautiainen H, Korpela M, *et al*. Comparison of combination therapy with single-drug therapy in early rheumatoid arthritis: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. Elsevier; 1999;353: 1568–1573.
  30. Kumar R, Verma V, Jain A, Jain RK, Maikhuri JP, Gupta G. Synergistic chemoprotective mechanisms of dietary phytoestrogens in a select combination against prostate cancer. *J Nutr Biochem*. 2011;22: 723–31.
  31. Jeon YW, Suh YJ. Synergistic apoptotic effect of celecoxib and luteolin on breast cancer cells. *Oncol Rep*. 2013;29: 819–825.
  32. Prabhakar PK, Kumar A, Doble M. Combination therapy: a new strategy to manage diabetes and its complications. *Phytomedicine*. 2014;21: 123–30.
  33. Breiting H-G. Drug synergy – mechanisms and methods of analysis. *Toxic Drug Test*. 2012; 143–166.
  34. Vyoma S. An ancient approach but turning into future potential source of therapeutics in Alzheimer’s disease. *Int Res J Pharm*. 2015;6: 10–21.
  35. Nagy M. History of Phytotherapy and Pharmacognosy [Internet]. *Semantics Scholar*; 2003. Available: <https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/4422/8853764a49be3bb8a3acfb4ee88d9391d36c.pdf>
  36. د. د. پري احمد محمد. Chapter One PLANTS AND PHYTOMEDICINE. Available: [www.uicnmed.org/nabp/web/documents/book/chapter1.pdf](http://www.uicnmed.org/nabp/web/documents/book/chapter1.pdf)
  37. Hajar R. The Air of History (Part II) Medicine in the Middle Ages. *Hear Views* . 2012;13: 158–162.
  38. Berger D. A brief history of medical diagnosis and the birth of the clinical laboratory. Part 1-Ancient times through the 19th century. *MLO Med Lab Obs*. 1999;7: 1–8.
  39. Aboelsoud NH. Herbal medicine in ancient Egypt. *J Med Plants Res*. 2010;4: 82–86.
  40. Ji H-F, Li X-J, Zhang H-Y. Can thousands of years of ancient medical knowledge lead us to new and powerful drug combinations in the fight against cancer and dementia? *EMBO Rep*. 2009;10.
  41. Petrovska BB. Historical review of medicinal plants’ usage. *Pharmacogn Rev*. Wolters Kluwer-Medknow Publications; 2012;6: 1–5.
  42. Patwardhan B, Vaidya ADB, Chorghade M. Ayurveda and natural products drug discovery. *Curr Sci*. 2004;86: 789–799.

43. Garodia P, Ichikawa H, Malani N, Sethi G, Aggarwal BB. From Ancient Medicine to Modern Medicine: Ayurvedic Concepts of Health and Their Role in Inflammation and Cancer. *J Soc Integr Oncol*. 2007;5: 1–15.
44. Mahomoodally MF. Traditional medicines in Africa: An appraisal of ten potent African medicinal plants. *Evidence-based Complement Altern Med*. 2013;2013.
45. Claridge JA, Fabian TC. History and Development of Evidence-based Medicine. *World J Surg*. Springer-Verlag; 2005;29: 547–553.
46. Keshavjee S, Farmer PE. Tuberculosis, Drug Resistance, and the History of Modern Medicine. *N Engl J Med*. 2012;10367: 931–6.
47. Demoor M. A history of nineteenth-century medical science: George Eliot's *Middlemarch*.
48. Ngo LT, Okogun JI, Folk WR. 21st century natural product research and drug development and traditional medicines. *Nat Prod Rep*. NIH Public Access; 2013;30: 584–592.
49. Khan Associate Professor H, Khan H. Brilliant future of phytomedicines in the light of latest technological developments. *J Phytopharm JPHYTO*. 2015;4: 58–60.
50. Idu M. Science and Technology in the 21 st Century: Phytomedicine in Focus. *Res J Recent Sci Res J Recent Sci*. 2012;2: 1–7.
51. Salim A, Chin Y, Kinghorn A. Drug Discovery from Plants. *Bioactive Molecules and Medicinal Plants*. Columbus: Springer; 2008. pp. 1–25.
52. Calixto JB. Efficacy, safety, quality control, marketing and regulatory guidelines for herbal medicines (phytotherapeutic agents). *Brazilian J Med Biol Res*. 2000;33: 179–189.
53. Fong HHS. Integration of herbal medicine into modern medical practices: issues and prospects. *Integr Cancer Ther*. SAGE Publications; 2002;1: 287–293.
54. Wagner H. Natural products chemistry and phytomedicine in the 21st century: New developments and challenges. *Pure Appl Chem*. 2005;77: 1–6.
55. Rasoanaivo P, Wright CW, Willcox ML, Gilbert B, Willcox M, Burford G, *et al*. Whole plant extracts versus single compounds for the treatment of malaria: synergy and positive interactions. *Malar J*. BioMed Central; 2011;10: 1–12.
56. Gertsch J. Botanical drugs, synergy, and network pharmacology: Forth and back to intelligent mixtures. *Planta Med*. 2011;77: 1086–1098.
57. Li L, Bonneton F, Yong X, Laudet V. Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology Botanical compounds and their regulation of nuclear receptor action : The case of traditional

- Chinese medicine. *Mol Cell Endocrinol*. Elsevier Ireland Ltd; 2015;401: 221–237.
58. Peltzer K, Preez NF, Ramlagan S, Fomundam H, Bodecker G, Kasilo O, *et al*. Use of traditional complementary and alternative medicine for HIV patients in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *BMC Public Health*. BioMed Central; 2008;8: 1–14.
  59. Kong J-M, Goh N-K, Chia L-S, Chia T-F. Recent advances in traditional plant drugs and orchids. *Acta Pharmacol Sin*. 2003;24: 7–21.
  60. Reich MR. The Global Drug Gap. *Science* (80- ). 2000;287: 1979–1982.
  61. Okigbo RN, Mmeka EC. An Appraisal of Phytomedicine in Africa. *KMITL Sci Tech J*. 2006;6: 83–94.
  62. Khan H. Brilliant future of phytomedicines in the light of latest technological developments. *J Phytopharm JPHYTO*. 2015;4: 58–60.
  63. Chikezie PC. Herbal Medicine: Yesterday, Today and Tomorrow. *Altern Integr Med*. 2015;4: 1–5.
  64. Gwynn BJ, Hylands PJ. Plants as a Source of Medicine. *Med Aromat Plants*. 2015;s3: 54–59.
  65. Katiyar C, Gupta A, Kanjilal S, Katiyar S. Drug discovery from plant sources: An integrated approach. *Ayu*. 2012;33: 10–19.
  66. Liu RH. Potential synergy of phytochemicals in cancer prevention: mechanism of action. *J Nutr*. 2004;134: 3479S–3485S.
  67. Liu RH. Health benefits of fruit and vegetables are from additive and synergistic combinations of phytochemicals. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2003;78: 3–6.
  68. Wagner H. Synergy research: Approaching a new generation of phytopharmaceuticals. *Fitoterapia*. 2011;82: 34–37.
  69. Efferth T, Koch E. Complex interactions between phytochemicals. The multi-target therapeutic concept of phytotherapy. *Curr Drug Targets*. 2011;12: 122–132.
  70. Gilbert B, Alves LF. Synergy in Plant Medicines. *Curr Med Chem*. 2003;10: 13–20.
  71. Berenbaum MC. What is synergy? *Pharmacol Rev*. 1989;41: 93–141.
  72. Williamson EM. Synergy and other interactions in phytomedicines. *Phytomedicine*. 2001;8: 401–409.
  73. Wagner H, Ulrich-Merzenich G. Synergy research: Approaching a new generation of phytopharmaceuticals. *Phytomedicine*. 2009;16: 97–110.

74. Tallarida RJ, Kimmel HL, Holtzman SG. Theory and statistics of detecting synergism between two active drugs: cocaine and buprenorphine. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1997;133: 378–382.
75. Zimmermann GR, Lehá R J, Keith CT. Multi-target therapeutics: when the whole is greater than the sum of the parts. *Drug Discov Today*. 2007;12: 34–42.
76. Wagner H. Natural products chemistry and phytomedicine research in the new millennium: new developments and challenges. *Arkivoc*. 2004;2004: 277–284.
77. Du Toit J, Joubert E, Britz TJ. Honeybush Tea-A Rediscovered Indigenous South African Herbal Tea. *J Sustain Agric*. 1998;12: 67–84.
78. McKay DL, Blumberg JB. A Review of the Bioactivity of South African Herbal Teas: Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*). *Phyther Res*. 2007;21: 1–16.
79. Boatwright JS, Savolainen V, Van Wyk B-E, Schutte-Vlok AL, Forest F, Van der Bank M. Systematic Position of the Anomalous Genus *Cadia* and the Phylogeny of the Tribe Podalyrieae (Fabaceae). *JSTOR*. 2008;33: 133–147.
80. Joubert E, Joubert ME, Bester C, de Beer D, De Lange JH. Honeybush (*Cyclopia* spp.): From local cottage industry to global markets — The catalytic and supporting role of research. *South African J Bot*. 2011;77: 887–907.
81. Du Toit J, Joubert E. The effect of pretreatment on the fermentation of honeybush tea (*Cyclopia maculata*). *J Sci Food Agric*. 1998;76: 537–545.
82. De Nysschen AM, Van Wyk B-E, Heerdens FR Van, Schutte ' AL. The Major Phenolic Compounds in the Leaves of *Cyclopia* Species (Honeybush Tea). *BimAmkal Syst Ecol Vd*. 1995;24: 243–246.
83. Kamara BI, Brand DJ, Brandt EV, Joubert E. Phenolic Metabolites from Honeybush Tea (*Cyclopia subternata*). *J Agric Food Chem*. 2004;52: 5391–5395.
84. Joubert E, Richards ES, Van Der Merwe JD, De Beer D, Manley M, Gelderblom WCA. Effect of Species Variation and Processing on Phenolic Composition and *In vitro* Antioxidant Activity of Aqueous Extracts of *Cyclopia* spp. (Honeybush Tea). *J Agric Food Chem*. 2008;56: 954–963.
85. Joubert E, Gelderblom WCA, Louw A, de Beer D. South African herbal teas: *Aspalathus linearis*, *Cyclopia* spp. and *Athrixia phyllicoides*—A review. *J Ethnopharmacol*. 2008;119: 376–412.
86. Louw A, Joubert E, Visser K. Phytoestrogenic potential of *Cyclopia* extracts and polyphenols. *Planta Med*. 2013;79: 580–590.
87. Kamara BI, Brandt EV, Ferreira D, Joubert E. Polyphenols from Honeybush Tea

- (*Cyclopia intermedia*). J Agric Food Chem. 2003;51: 3874–3879.
88. Le Roux M, Cronje JC, Joubert E, Burger BV. Chemical characterization of the constituents of the aroma of honeybush, *Cyclopia genistoides*. South African J Bot. 2008;74: 139–143.
  89. SAHTA - Honeybush. In: South African Honeybush Tea Association [Internet]. 2017 [cited 8 Jan 2017]. Available: <http://www.sahoneybush.co.za/honeybush.html?layout=blog>
  90. Dharmananda S. Honeybush: Healthful beverage tea from South Africa [Internet]. Portland; 2004 [cited 8 Jan 2017]. Available: <http://www.itmonline.org/arts/honeybush.htm>
  91. Traditional Knowledge Associated with Rooibos and honeybush Species in South Africa. Western Cape: Siyanda Samahlubi Consulting; 2014. pp. 1–64.
  92. Low CH. Different Histories of Buchu: Euro-American Appropriation of San and Khoekhoe Knowledge of Buchu Plants. Environ Hist Camb. 2007;13: 333–361.
  93. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M. Honeybush (*Cyclopia* sp.) - A rich source of compounds with high antimutagenic properties. Fitoterapia. Elsevier B.V.; 2009;80: 3–11.
  94. Marnewick JL, Joubert E, Swart P, Van Der Westhuizen F, And |, Gelderblom WC. Modulation of Hepatic Drug Metabolizing Enzymes and Oxidative Status by Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*), Green and Black (*Camellia sinensis*) Teas in Rats. J Agric Food Chem. 2003;51: 8113–8119.
  95. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Sowinski P, Glod D, Gorynski K, Bucinski A. Isolation and structure elucidation of phenolic compounds from *Cyclopia subternata* Vogel (honeybush) intact plant and *in vitro* cultures. Food Chem. Elsevier Ltd; 2012;133: 1373–1382.
  96. Nelson DE, Kreps GL, Hesse BW, Croyle RT, Willis G, Arora NK, *et al.* The Health Information National Trends Survey (HINTS): Development, Design, and Dissemination. J Health Commun. 2004;9: 443–460.
  97. Schuster TL, Dobson M, Jauregui M, Blanks RHI. Wellness Lifestyles I: A Theoretical Framework Linking Wellness, Health Lifestyles, and Complementary and Alternative Medicine. J Altern Complement Med. 2004;10: 349–356.
  98. We are what we eat. Healthy eating trends around the world. [Internet]. Global Health and Wellness Report. The Nielsen Company; 2015. Available: [https://www.nielsen.com/content/dam/niensenglobal/eu/nielseninsights/pdfs/Nielsen Global Health and Wellness Report - January 2015.pdf](https://www.nielsen.com/content/dam/niensenglobal/eu/nielseninsights/pdfs/Nielsen%20Global%20Health%20and%20Wellness%20Report%20-%20January%202015.pdf)
  99. Marnewick JL. Rooibos and Honeybush: Recent Advances in Chemistry, Biological

- Activity and Pharmacognosy. African Natural Plant Products: New Discoveries and Challenges in Chemistry and Quality. Bellville, South Africa: American Chemical Society; 2009. pp. 277–294.
100. de Beer D, Schulze A, Joubert E, de Villiers A, Malherbe C, Stander M. Food Ingredient Extracts of *Cyclopia subternata* (Honeybush): Variation in Phenolic Composition and Antioxidant Capacity. *Molecules*. 2012;17: 14602–14624.
  101. Joubert E, de Beer D, Malherbe CJ. Herbal teas—Exploring untapped potential and strengthening commercialisation. *South African J Bot*. 2017; 1–3.
  102. Visser K, Mortimer M, Louw A. *Cyclopia* extracts act as ER $\alpha$  antagonists and ER $\beta$  agonists, *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *PLoS One*. 2013;8: 1–22.
  103. Muller CJF, Joubert E, Gabuza K, Beer D De, Fey SJ, Louw J. Assessment of the Antidiabetic Potential of an Aqueous Extract of Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*) in Streptozotocin and Obese Insulin Resistant Wistar Rats. In: Iraj Rasooli, editor. *Phytochemicals - Bioactivities and Impact on Health*. InTech; 2010. pp. 313–333.
  104. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Pawlowska J, Luczkiewicz P, Sowinski P, Witkowski J, *et al*. Isolation of xanthone and benzophenone derivatives from *Cyclopia genistoides* (L.) Vent. (honeybush) and their pro-apoptotic activity on synoviocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Fitoterapia*. Elsevier B.V.; 2013;90: 199–208.
  105. Visser K, Zierau O, Macejová D, Goerl F, Muders M, Baretton GB, *et al*. The phytoestrogenic *Cyclopia* extract, SM6Met, increases median tumor free survival and reduces tumor mass and volume in chemically induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2016; 1–7.
  106. Dube P. The antimicrobial and associated antioxidant activity of rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and honeybush (*Cyclopia Intermedia*) herbal teas. Masters dissertation. Cape Peninsula University of Technology. 2015.
  107. Mckay DL, Blumberg JB. A Review of the Bioactivity of South African Herbal Teas: Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*). *Phyther Res* *Phyther Res*. 2007;21: 1–16.
  108. Pham-Huy LA, He H, Pham-Huy C. Free radicals, antioxidants in disease and health. *Int J Biomed Sci*. 2008;4: 89–96.
  109. Marnewick J, Joubert E, Joseph S, Swanevelder S, Swart P, Gelderblom W. Inhibition of tumour promotion in mouse skin by extracts of rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*), unique South African herbal teas. *Cancer Lett* . 2005;24: 193–202.
  110. van der Merwe JD, Joubert E, Richards ES, Manley M, Snijman PW, Marnewick JL, *et al*. A comparative study on the antimutagenic properties of aqueous extracts of *Aspalathus linearis* (rooibos), different *Cyclopia* spp. (honeybush) and *Camellia*

- sinensis* teas. *Mutat Res - Genet Toxicol Environ Mutagen*. 2006;611: 42–53.
111. Muller CJ., Joubert E, Gabuza K, de D, J. S, Louw J. Assessment of the Antidiabetic Potential of an Aqueous Extract of Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*) in Streptozotocin and Obese Insulin Resistant Wistar Rats. *Phytochemicals - Bioactivities and Impact on Health*. InTech; 2011.
  112. Dudhia Z, Louw J, Muller C, Joubert E, de Beer D, Kinnear C, *et al.* *Cyclopia maculata* and *Cyclopia subternata* (honeybush tea) inhibits adipogenesis in 3T3-L1 pre-adipocytes. *Eur J Integr Med*. Elsevier GmbH.; 2013;1–8.
  113. Verhoog NJD. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of honeybush (*Cyclopia*). Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2006.
  114. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Screening of four *Cyclopia* (honeybush) species for putative phyto-oestrogenic activity by oestrogen receptor binding assays. *S Afr J Sci*. 2007; 13–21.
  115. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of *Cyclopia genistoides* (Honeybush) methanol extracts and relevant polyphenols. *J Agric Food Chem*. 2007;55: 4371–4381.
  116. Mfenyana C, DeBeer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity and benchmarking against commercial phytoestrogen extracts. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2008;112: 74–86.
  117. Mfenyana C. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2008.
  118. Visser JAK. Phytoestrogenic Extracts of *Cyclopia* Modulate Molecular Targets Involved in the Prevention and Treatment of Breast Cancer. PhD dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2013.
  119. Mortimer MF. Isolation and identification of compounds conferring phytoestrogenic activity to *Cyclopia* extracts. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2014.
  120. Brzezinski A, Debi A. Phytoestrogens: the “natural” selective estrogen receptor modulators? *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol*. 1999;85: 47–51.
  121. Cos P, De Bruyne T, Apers S, Vanden Berghe D, Pieters L, Vlietinck AJ. Phytoestrogens: Recent developments. *Planta Med*. 2003;69: 589–599.
  122. Cederroth CR. Soy, phytoestrogens and metabolism: A review. *Mol Cell Endocrinol*. 2009;304: 30–42.
  123. Sirotkin A V, Harrath AH. Phytoestrogens and their effects. *Eur J Pharmacol*. Elsevier; 2014;741: 230–236.

124. Murkies AL, Wilcox G, Davis SR. Phytoestrogens. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab. Endocrine Society*; 1998;83: 297–303.
125. Wroblewski Lissin L, Cooke JP. Phytoestrogens and cardiovascular health. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2000;35: 1403–1410.
126. S Sebastian PK, Varman Thampan R. Phytoestrogens. *Indian J Biotechnol.* 2003;2: 387–395.
127. Moreira AC, Silva AM, Santos MS, Sardão VA. Phytoestrogens as alternative hormone replacement therapy in menopause: What is real, what is unknown. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. Elsevier Ltd*; 2014;143: 61–71.
128. Willis MS, Wians FH. The role of nutrition in preventing prostate cancer: A review of the proposed mechanism of action of various dietary substances. *Clin Chim Acta.* 2003;330: 57–83.
129. Hsieh C-Y, Santoli RC, Haslam SZ, Helferich WG. Estrogenic Effects of Genistein on the Growth of Estrogen Receptor-positive Human Breast Cancer (MCF-7) Cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *CANCER Res.* 1998;58: 3833–3838.
130. Chiechi LM. Dietary phytoestrogens in the prevention of long-term postmenopausal diseases. *Int J Gynecol Obstet.* 1999;67: 39–40.
131. Patisaul HB, Jefferson W. The pros and cons of phytoestrogens. *Front Neuroendocrinol. NIH Public Access*; 2010;31: 400–419.
132. El Touny LH, Banerjee PP. Identification of a biphasic role for genistein in the regulation of prostate cancer growth and metastasis. *Cancer Res.* 2009;69: 3695–703.
133. Anderson JJ, Ambrose WW, Garner SC. Biphasic effects of genistein on bone tissue in the ovariectomized, lactating rat model. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med. SAGE Publications*; 1998;217: 345–50.
134. Mense SM, Hei TK, Ganju RK, Bhat HK. Phytoestrogens and Breast Cancer Prevention: Possible Mechanisms of Action.: EBSCOhost. *Environ Health Perspect.* 2008;116: 426–433.
135. Jungbauer A, Medjakovic S. Phytoestrogens and the metabolic syndrome. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. Elsevier Ltd*; 2014;139: 277–289.
136. Pearce ST, Jordan VC. The biological role of estrogen receptors  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in cancer. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol.* 2004;50: 3–22.
137. Heldring N, Pike A, Andersson S, Matthews J, Cheng G, Treuter E, *et al.* Estrogen Receptors : How Do They Signal and What Are Their Targets. *Physiol Rev.* 2007;87: 905–931.



138. Hall JM, Couse JF, Korach KS. The Multifaceted Mechanisms of Estradiol and Estrogen Receptor Signaling. *J Biol Chem.* 2001;276: 36869–36872.
139. Gustafsson J. Estrogen receptor beta - a new dimension in estrogen mechanism of action. *J Endocrinol.* 1999;163: 379–383.
140. Katzenellenbogen BS, Choi I, Delage-Mourroux R, Ediger TR, Martini PG V, Montano M, *et al.* Molecular mechanisms of estrogen action: Selective ligands and receptor pharmacology. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2000;74: 279–285.
141. Shao W, Brown M. Advances in estrogen receptor biology: prospects for improvements in targeted breast cancer therapy. *Breast Cancer Res.* 2004;6: 39–52.
142. Ariazi E a, Ariazi JL, Cordera F, Jordan VC. Estrogen receptors as therapeutic targets in breast cancer. *Curr Top Med Chem.* 2006;6: 181–202.
143. Leitman DC, Paruthiyil S, Vivar OI, Saunier EF, Herber CB, Cohen I, *et al.* Regulation of specific target genes and biological responses by estrogen receptor subtype agonists. *Curr Opin Pharmacol.* Elsevier Ltd; 2010;10: 629–636.
144. Lattrich C, Stegerer A, Häring J, Schüller S, Ortmann O, Treeck O. Estrogen receptor  $\beta$  agonists affect growth and gene expression of human breast cancer cell lines. *Steroids.* Elsevier Inc.; 2013;78: 195–202.
145. Sareddy GR, Vadlamudi RK. Cancer therapy using natural ligands that target estrogen receptor beta. *Chin J Nat Med.* China Pharmaceutical University; 2015;13: 801–807.
146. Warner M, Gustafsson J-Å. The role of estrogen receptor beta (ERbeta) in malignant diseases - a new potential target for antiproliferative drugs in prevention and treatment of cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun.* 2010;396: 63–66.
147. Kushner PJ, Agard DA, Greene GL, Scanlan TS, Shiau AK, Uht RM, *et al.* Estrogen receptor pathways to AP-1. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol.* 2000;74: 311–317.
148. Silva E, Kabil A, Kortenkamp A. Cross-talk between non-genomic and genomic signalling pathways — Distinct effect profiles of environmental estrogens. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol.* Academic Press; 2010;245: 160–170.
149. Raz L, Khan MM, Mahesh VB, Vadlamudi RK, Brann DW. Rapid Estrogen Signaling in the Brain. *Neurosignals.* 2008;16: 140–153.
150. Crops I. Ferulic and *p*-coumaric acids extraction by alkaline hydrolysis of brewer's spent grain. 2007;25: 231-237.
151. Malherbe CJ, Willenburg E, de Beer D, Bonnet SL, van der Westhuizen JH, Joubert E. Iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside from *Cyclopia genistoides*: Isolation and quantitative comparison of antioxidant capacity with mangiferin and isomangiferin using on-line HPLC antioxidant assays. *J Chromatogr B.* Elsevier B.V.; 2014;951–952: 164–171.

152. Kakkar S, Bais S. A review on protocatechuic Acid and its pharmacological potential. *ISRN Pharmacol*. Hindawi Publishing Corporation; 2014;2014: 952943.
153. Li X, Wang X, Chen D, Chen S. Antioxidant Activity and Mechanism of Protocatechuic Acid *in vitro*. *Funct Foods Heal Dis*. 2011;1: 232–244.
154. Lee IC, Bae JS. Anti-inflammatory effects of vicenin-2 and scolyoside on polyphosphate-mediated vascular inflammatory responses. *Inflamm Res*. Springer International Publishing; 2016;65: 203–212.
155. Ku S-K, Baek M-C, Bae J-S. Anti-inflammatory effects of methylthiouracil *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. Springer Basel; 2015;288: 374–386.
156. Tanaka T, Tanaka T, Tanaka M. Potential Cancer Chemopreventive Activity of Protocatechuic Acid. *J Exp Clin Med*. 2011;3: 27–33.
157. Kim NM, Kim J, Chung HY, Choi JS. Isolation of luteolin 7-O-rutinoside and esculetin with potential antioxidant activity from the aerial parts of *Artemisia montana*. *Arch Pharm Res*. Pharmaceutical Society of Korea; 2000;23: 237–239.
158. Lin Y, Shi R, Wang X, Shen H-M. Luteolin, a flavonoid with potentials for cancer prevention and therapy. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets*. 2008;8: 634–646.
159. Cuccioloni M, Bonfili L, Mozzicafreddo M, Cecarini V, Nabissi M, Scuri S, *et al*. Mangiferin blocks proliferation and induces apoptosis of breast cancer cells via suppression of mevalonate pathway and by proteasome inhibition. *Food Funct*. The Royal Society of Chemistry; 2016;
160. Shen J-M, Wang J, Liu X-Y, Zhao C-D, Zhang H-X. Study of mangiferin-receptor affinity by cell membrane chromatography using rat pancreas. *Med Chem Res*. 2012;21: 1796–1802.
161. Wilkinson AS, Taing M-W, Pierson JT, Lin C-N, Dietzgen RG, Shaw PN, *et al*. Estrogen modulation properties of mangiferin and quercetin and the mangiferin metabolite norathyriol. *Food Funct*. Royal Society of Chemistry; 2015;6: 1847–1854.
162. Markaverich BM, Shoulars K, Rodriguez MA. Luteolin Regulation of Estrogen Signaling and Cell Cycle Pathway Genes in MCF-7 Human Breast Cancer Cells. *Int J Biomed Sci*. NIH Public Access; 2011;7: 101–111.
163. Innocenti G, Vegeto E, Dall'Acqua S, Ciana P, Giorgetti M, Agradi E, *et al*. *In vitro* estrogenic activity of *Achillea millefolium* L. *Phytomedicine*. 2007;14: 147–152.
164. Ahmad I, Aqil F, Owais M. *Modern phytomedicine : turning medical plants into drugs*. Wiley-VCH; 2006.
165. Rasool I, editor. *Bioactive Compounds in Phytomedicine*. Published by InTech Janeza Trdine. Croatia: InTech; 2011.

166. Mohamed IN, Shuid AN, Borhanuddin B, Fozi NFM. The Application of Phytomedicine in Modern Drug Development. *Internet J Herb Plant Med. Internet Scientific Publications*; 2012;1: 1–9.
167. Gurib-Fakim A. Medicinal plants: Traditions of yesterday and drugs of tomorrow. *Mol Aspects Med.* 2006;27: 1–93.
168. Tyler VE, Capasso L, Israelsen LD, Ondrizek RR, Chan PJ, Patton WC, *et al.* Herbal medicine: from the past to the future. *Public Health Nutr. Cambridge University Press*; 2000;3: 447–452.
169. Roberts EAH, Wood DJ. The fermentation process in tea manufacture; oxidation of substrates by tea oxidase. *Biochem J. Portland Press Ltd*; 1950;47: 175–86.

## **Chapter 3: Material and Methods**

### 3.1 Characterisation of cell lines used in study

In this study, three different cell lines were used based on specific characteristics. Human embryonic kidney (HEK293) cells and African green monkey kidney fibroblast (COS-1) cells do not contain any endogenous estrogen receptors (ERs) and were used to investigate ER subtype specific activity, whereas MCF-7 BUS cells are an ER positive human breast cancer cell line and contain both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ . Medium used for cell maintenance and experimental procedures were supplemented as indicated in Table 3.1.

#### 3.1.1 Cell culture

Human embryonic kidney (HEK293) cells (a kind gift from R. Louw, Stellenbosch University, ATCC (USA) cat# CRL-1573, passage 33), human breast cancer (MCF-7 BUS) cells (a kind gift from A. Soto, Tufts University, Boston, Massachusetts, USA, passage 118) and African green monkey kidney fibroblast (COS-1) cells (ATCC, USA cat# CCL-70, passage 4) were maintained in T75 flasks (Bio-Smart Scientific, South Africa), in **supplemented phenol-red DMEM** (Table 3.1), in a humidified cell incubator (95% humidity, 5% CO<sub>2</sub> at 37°C). All the cells were tested for mycoplasma infections using Hoechst stain [1] and only mycoplasma free cells were used.

**Table 3.1: Types of Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's medium (DMEM) used for cell culture maintenance and experimental procedures.**

	<b>Supplemented phenol-red DMEM</b>	<b>Un-supplemented phenol-red free DMEM</b>	<b>Supplemented phenol-red free DMEM</b>	<b>Supplemented DMEM:HamF-12 (1:1) medium</b>
<b>Type of medium</b>	<b>High glucose (4.5 g/L) phenol-red DMEM<sup>a</sup></b>	<b>Low glucose (1 g/L) phenol-red free DMEM<sup>a</sup></b>	<b>Low glucose (1 g/L) phenol-red free DMEM<sup>a</sup></b>	<b>High glucose (3.2 g/L) phenol red DMEM F-12 Nutrient mixture (HAM)<sup>b</sup></b>
<b>BUFFER</b>				
<b>Sodium bicarbonate (1.5 g/L)<sup>a</sup></b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	(contains 1.2 g/L)
<b>L-Glucose (3.5 g/L)<sup>a</sup></b>	-	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-
<b>Sodium pyruvate (0.11 g/L)<sup>a</sup></b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	(contains 0.11 g/L)	(contains 0.11 g/L)	(contains 0.055 g/L)
<b>1% (v/v) antibiotic mixture<sup>c, d</sup></b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>10% (v/v) Charcoal stripped fetal calf serum<sup>a</sup></b>	-	-	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-
<b>10% (v/v) Fetal calf serum<sup>e</sup> (not stripped)</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-	-	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Purpose of medium</b>	<b>Maintaining cells Replating COS-1 &amp; MCF7 cells</b>	<b>Serum starving cells</b>	<b>Inducing cells with compounds</b>	<b>Replating HEK293 cells</b>

<sup>a</sup> Sigma-Aldrich®, South Africa<sup>b</sup> Gibco® by Life Technologies, USA<sup>c</sup> 100IU/ml penicillin and 100µg/ml streptomycin<sup>d</sup> Invitrogen, South Africa<sup>e</sup> Merck, South Africa

### 3.1.2 Western blot analysis

Western blot analysis was conducted to characterise cell lines (HEK293 and MCF-7) used in this study in terms of ER subtypes. Un-transfected COS-1/HEK293 cells were used as negative control and COS-1/HEK293 cells transfected with the ER subtypes respectively, were used as positive controls. The presence/absence of ER $\alpha$ / $\beta$  was identified with specific primary and secondary antibodies from Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Inc. and from Abcam, England (as indicated in results figure legends) at appropriate concentrations (Table 3.2).

**Table 3.2: Antibodies used in Western blot analysis.**

Protein Size	Primary antibody	Dilution	Secondary antibody	Dilution
ER $\alpha$ (66kDa)	ER $\alpha$ (MC-20): sc-542 rabbit polyclonal antibody	1:500	goat anti-rabbit IgG - HRP sc-2030	1:1000
	ER $\alpha$ (E115): ab32063 rabbit monoclonal antibody	1:400		
ER $\beta$ (56kDa)	ER $\beta$ (H-150): sc-8974 rabbit polyclonal antibody	1:1000	goat anti-rabbit IgG - HRP sc-2030	1:1000
	ER $\beta$ (EPR3777): ab92306 rabbit monoclonal antibody	1:400		
GAPDH (37kDa)	GAPDH (0411): sc-47724 mouse monoclonal antibody	1:1000	goat anti-mouse IgG - HRP Sc-2005	1:5000

#### 3.1.2.1 Transfection of cells

HEK293 and COS-1 cells, transfected with either ER $\alpha$  or ER $\beta$ , were used as positive control to investigate the presence or absence of the ERs in cell lines used in this study.

HEK293 cells were seeded at a cell density of  $4 \times 10^6$  cells per sterile 10cm cell binding plate (Corning<sup>®</sup>, USA) in **supplemented DMEM: HamF-12 (1:1)** medium (Table 3.1) and COS-1 cells were seeded at a cell density of  $1.5 \times 10^6$  cells per sterile 10 cm plate in **supplemented**

**phenol-red DMEM**. After 24 hours, the medium was changed to **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** (Table 3.1) and the cells were transfected with 150ng of either ER $\alpha$  (pSG5-hER $\alpha$ ) or ER $\beta$  (pSG5-hER $\beta$ ) expression vectors (see section 3.2.4.1) using FugeneXtreme Transfection Reagent (Roche®, South Africa) according to manufacturer's specifications (3 $\mu$ l FugeneXtreme: $\mu$ g DNA). The next day the cells were re-plated at a cell density of 2.5 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells per well in a sterile 6 well plate in **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** and again allowed to settle overnight.

### 3.1.2.2 Preparations for Western blot analyses

The following day the transfected cells were rinsed with 2ml ice cold PBS/well and lysed with 150 $\mu$ l lysis buffer A (10 mM KCl, 0.1% NP-40, 10 mM, Hepes pH 7.5, 1.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>) and Complete Mini protease inhibitor cocktail (Roche®, South Africa)) was added. Plates were shaken on ice for 15 - 20 minutes and frozen overnight at -20°C to ensure complete cell lysis. The cells were then thawed and scraped loose from the plate using a cell scraper after which the lysates were transferred to a 1.5ml tube. Cell lysates were centrifuged at 12 000 x g for 10 minute at 4°C and the clear lysates were then transferred to a new 1.5ml tube and stored at -20°C.

Untransfected MCF-7, HEK293 and COS-1 cells were seeded at a cell density of 2.5 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells per sterile 6 well plates. After 24 hours, the medium was changed to **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** and after 48 hours the cells were lysed as described above.

### 3.1.2.3 Western blot

The cleared cell lysates (15 $\mu$ l) were separated with sodium dodecyl sulphate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE), using a 10% SDS-PAGE gel (70V for 15 minutes and



100V for 90 minutes using a BIO-RAD PowerPac™ HC and BIO-RAD Model Mini Protean®), and transferred to a Hybond-ECL nitrocellulose membrane using an ECL Semi-dry Blotter (Amersham Biosciences, USA) at 0.18A for 90 minutes. The membrane was then incubated in 10% (w/v) fat free milk powder (ERβ and GAPDH) or 5% (w/v) casein powder (ERα) dissolved in Tris-buffered saline (TBS) for 120 minutes on an orbital shaker. Thereafter the membrane was rinsed once with TBST (tris-buffered saline and 0.1% (v/v) Tween20), the specific primary antibody (see Table 3.2) was added to the membrane and incubated overnight at 4°C on an orbital shaker. Following incubation the membrane was washed with TBST (once for 20 minutes and twice for 5 minutes) after which the specific secondary antibody (which contains horseradish peroxidase [2]), see Table 3.2, was added and incubated at room temperature for 120 minutes on an orbital shaker. Thereafter, the membranes were washed again with TBST (same as before) and once with TBS after which the membrane was incubated with a chemiluminescent substrate (Clarity™ Western ECL Substrate from BIO-RAD) for 5 minutes and visualized either on medical x-ray film (Axim) or using the MyECL Imager (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Inc.), as indicated in results figure legends. The developed x-ray film was scanned in and the image adjusted in Microsoft Word 2010, whereas the images from MyECL Imager was analysed and adjusted on MyECL Imager software version 2.0. A colour protein ladder (Color Protein Standard Broad Range ladder, Biolabs New England) was used to determine protein sizes. Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) was used as a protein loading control to evaluate the relative amount of total protein in each well.

## 3.2 Assays to test estrogenic activity

### 3.2.1 Test compounds

17 $\beta$ -Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>) and fulvestrant (ICI 182,780), obtained from Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup>, were used as ER agonist and antagonist standards, respectively. *Cyclopia* extracts and fractions used in this study, previously prepared by Mortimer *et al.* [3], include the *Cyclopia subternata* (harvesting M6) sequential methanol (SM6Met) extract, the non-polar fraction (NP) of SM6Met and fraction 3 (F3) of the NP fraction. *Cyclopia* extracts and fractions were stored in a vacuum-sealed desiccator at room temperature in the dark, so as to prevent/decrease oxidation of samples [4–7]. Phenolic compounds investigated include: mangiferin, luteolin, luteolin 7-rutinoside (scolymoside), and iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside all from Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup> (South Africa), protocatechuic acid and *p*-coumaric acid from Fluka<sup>™</sup> Analytical, Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup>, and isomangiferin from Chemos GmbH<sup>®</sup> (Germany). Phenolic compounds were stored as recommended by manufacturers/suppliers.

### 3.2.2 Preparation of compounds

Stock solutions of compounds/extracts/fractions used in the study were prepared in one of three ways: (1) dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), (2) dissolved in ethanol (EtOH), which was then evaporated or (3) dissolved directly in medium. Compounds prepared in DMSO were diluted 1000x in medium to achieve a 0.1% (v/v) DMSO concentration. Stock Solutions were stored at -20 °C.

17 $\beta$ -Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>), fulvestrant (ICI 182,780), and the SM6Met extract, NP fraction and fraction 3 were prepared in DMSO from Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup> (South Africa). For re-constitution experiments, phenolic compounds, excluding mangiferin, were prepared in ethanol (EtOH).

The EtOH was evaporated using nitrogen gas (Techne Sample Concentrator) in order to concentrate the compound mixtures at desired concentrations (Table 3.1), avoid oxidation of polyphenols and, in turn, also avoid the use of high levels of DMSO in tissue culture. Medium was added to the evaporated mixtures. Mangiferin did not dissolve in EtOH at high concentrations, but did dissolve in water and was consequently added directly to the medium at desired concentrations (as indicated in results figure legends).

**Table 3.1: Phenolic content in SM6Met F3 as identified in Mortimer *et al.* [3], which was used in reconstitution experiments.**

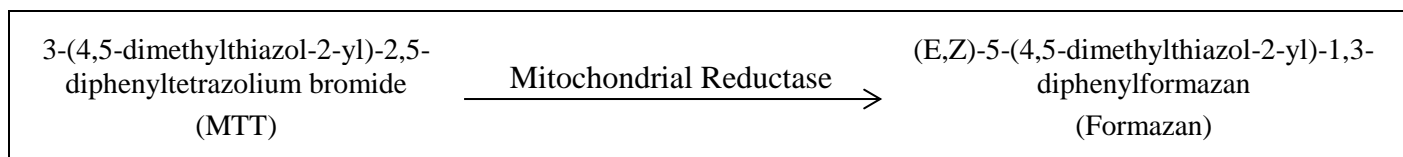
Concentrations	Mangiferin	Isomangiferin	p-Coumaric acid	Scolymoside	Luteolin	Protocatechuic acid	Iriflophenone-glc
mg/9.8mg <sup>a</sup>	1.1334	0.3936	0.0559	0.7515	0.0201	0.0634	0.0089
1x M <sup>b</sup>	2.684 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	0.932 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	3.404 x 10 <sup>-7</sup>	1.264 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	4.735 x 10 <sup>-8</sup>	4.111 x 10 <sup>-7</sup>	2.204 x 10 <sup>-8</sup>
10x M	2.684 x 10 <sup>-5</sup>	0.932 x 10 <sup>-5</sup>	3.404 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	1.264 x 10 <sup>-5</sup>	4.735 x 10 <sup>-7</sup>	4.111 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	2.204 x 10 <sup>-7</sup>
100x M	2.684 x 10 <sup>-4</sup>	0.932 x 10 <sup>-4</sup>	3.404 x 10 <sup>-5</sup>	1.264 x 10 <sup>-4</sup>	4.735 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>	4.111 x 10 <sup>-5</sup>	2.204 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>

<sup>a</sup> mg polyphenol in 9.8 mg SM6Met F3

<sup>b</sup> molar concentration of polyphenols corresponding to 9.8mg/ml SM6Met F3

### 3.2.3 Proliferation assay

Methylthiazol Tetrazolium (MTT) [8] was used to investigate the proliferation activity of the test compounds/extracts/fractions in MCF-7 BUS cells (Figure 3.1). Live cells are able to reduce MTT to formazan, which can be measured with a spectrophotometer. Therefore, an increase in live cells signifies cell proliferation. The MTT assay was optimised from a previous lab protocol (see pre-optimisation protocol) to obtain optimal proliferation activity. Agonist (in the absence of E<sub>2</sub>) and antagonist (in the presence of E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup>/10<sup>-12</sup>M) mode was tested.



**Figure 3.1: Conversion of MTT to formazan via mitochondrial reductase in live cells.**

### 3.2.3.1 Pre-optimisation protocol (previous lab protocol)

MCF-7 BUS cells (withdrawn from pen-strep for seven days), were seeded at a density of  $1 \times 10^4$  cells per well in a sterile 96 well plate in **supplemented phenol-red DMEM** and allowed to settle overnight. The cells were then rinsed with 200 $\mu$ l/well pre-heated (37°C) PBS after which they were steroid and serum starved with 200 $\mu$ l/well **un-supplemented phenol red-free DMEM** (Table 3.1) for 24 hours. After starvation, the cells were treated with test compounds/extracts/fractions (as indicated in results figure legends) in **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** for 24 hours (day 1), and re-induced after 48 (day 2) and 72 hours (day 3). Thereafter the MTT assay was performed. MTT powder (thiazolyl blue tetrazolium bromide from Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup>) was dissolved in PBS (5 mg/ml) and filtered using a syringe and a cellulose acetate 0.2  $\mu$ M 25mm syringe filter (Lasec, South Africa). After incubation with the compounds/extracts/fractions, cells were rinsed with sterile pre-heated (37°C) PBS and subsequently incubated for 4 hours in MTT solution and **un-supplemented phenol red free DMEM** at a ratio of 1:4 (v/v). After the 4 hours, the medium containing the MTT solution was aspirated and 200 $\mu$ l/well DMSO was added to dissolve the formazan crystals and obtain a purple solution. Absorbance was measured at 550 nm on a spectrophotometer (BioTek<sup>®</sup> Gen5TM). All results were expressed as fold relative to solvent (set at 1).

### 3.2.3.2 Optimisation

As dose response curves were required and optimal potency (EC<sub>50</sub>) and efficacy (fold induction) could not be obtained with the pre-optimization proliferation assay protocol,

further optimisation was therefore needed. Optimization included changes in cell density, type of tissue culture plates and induction times (as indicated in results figure legends). Different cell densities were investigated in different size tissue culture plates: MCF-7 cells were seeded in sterile 96 well plates ( $1 \times 10^4$  cells/well), 24 well plates ( $5 \times 10^4$  cells/well) and 6 well plates ( $1 \times 10^5$  and  $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells/well, respectively) in **supplemented phenol red DMEM**. Cells were also treated with a range of different concentrations of  $E_2$  (as indicated in results figure legends) to investigate optimal proliferative activity. In addition, induction time periods were optimised according to Karmaker *et al.* [9], which suggested an induction time period of 120 hours (5 days) with test compounds.

### 3.2.3.3 Post-optimisation protocol

Optimisation of the MTT assay revealed that Karmaker's protocol provided the best cell proliferation results. Cell density, plate type and induction time period were changed accordingly.

MCF-7 BUS cells were seeded at a cell density of  $1 \times 10^5$  cells per well in a sterile 6 well plate in **supplemented phenol-red DMEM** and allowed to settle overnight. The next day the cells were rinsed with 2ml/well pre-heated ( $37^\circ\text{C}$ ) PBS and the medium was changed to 2ml/well **un-supplemented phenol red free DMEM**. The cells were steroid and serum starved for 24 hours. After cell starvation (day 0), the cells were treated with test compounds/extracts/fractions (as indicated in results figure legends) prepared in **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** for 72 hours (day 0 - 3), and re-induced for another 48 hours (day 3 - 5). After inducing the cells with the compounds/extracts/fractions for a total of 120 hours (5 days), the MTT assay was conducted as described in the pre-optimisation protocol. After 4 hours the medium containing the MTT solution was aspirated and 2ml of DMSO was added to each well and mixed until a clear purple solution was

observed. The purple DMSO cell mixture was then re-plated into a 96 well plate and the absorbance measured at 550 nm with a spectrophotometer (BioTek<sup>®</sup> Gen5TM). All results were expressed as fold relative to solvent (set at 1).

### 3.2.4 Promoter Reporter Studies

#### 3.2.4.1 Plasmids and plasmid preparation

The following plasmids were used in promoter reporter studies:

- The estrogen receptor (ER) subtype expression vectors for human ER $\alpha$  (pSG5-hER $\alpha$ , 5860 bp) and human ER $\beta$  (pSG5-hER $\beta$ , 5663 bp) were obtained from S. Denger and F. Gannon [10].
- Two estrogen response element (ERE) containing promoter reporter plasmids, one containing the ERE from the vitellogenin gene (ERE.vit2.TATA.luc,  $\pm$ 5730bp) was obtained from K. Karach [11] and the second containing the ERE from the human PS2 gene (pGL3-2ERE.PS2.luc,  $\pm$ 5614bp) was obtained from B. Belandia [12]. Both plasmids contain a coding region for luciferase.
- The pGL2 basic empty vector (5598 bp), obtained from Promega (USA), contains no eukaryotic promoter or enhancer sequences and was use as a filler plasmid.

Glycerol stocks of transformed DH5 $\alpha$  *Escherichia coli* cells (made competent using the calcium chloride method and transformed using the heat shock method [13]) containing the relevant plasmids, were grown overnight at 37° C in 200ml lysogeny broth (LB) medium (0.024 M NaCl, 5 g/L Yeast Extract (Merck, South Africa), and 10 g/L Tryptone (Merck, South Africa)) in the presence of 50  $\mu$ g/ml ampicillin until the bacterial cells reached an optical density (O.D.<sub>600</sub>) of 2–4.

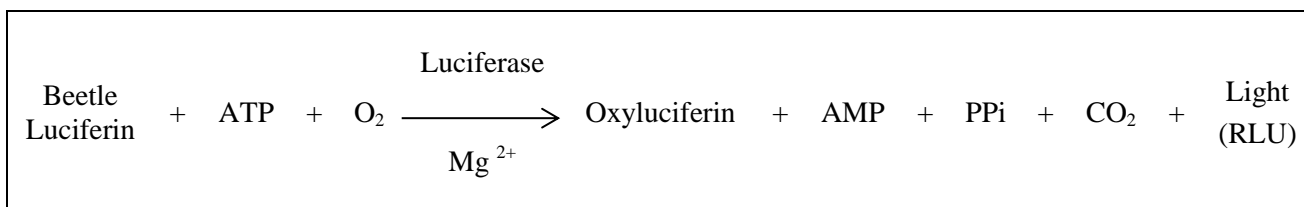
The PureYield™ Plasmid Maxiprep System (Promega, USA) was used according to the manufacture's specifications to isolate plasmid DNA. The concentration and purity of DNA was determined using the NanoDrop® ND-100 spectrophotometer (Thermo Fisher Scientific Inc.). The DNA concentration was calculated by the NanoDrop® 2000 software from the absorbance determined at 260 nm, while the purity was calculated using the absorbance ratio of 260/280 nm, since pure DNA at this wavelength would give a ratio of ~1.8. Restriction enzyme digestion of the plasmid DNA was conducted using the restriction enzyme HindIII (5U/μg) obtained from Fermentas (Thermo Fisher Scientific Inc.) for all the plasmid constructs. The plasmid DNA (0.2μg DNA/well, digested and undigested) was separated using agarose gel electrophoresis (100V for 30 - 60 minutes) on a 1% agarose gel. Plasmid DNA size and integrity was subsequently analysed and evaluated using a GeneRuler™ 1kb DNA Ladder (Inqaba, South Africa) and E-Capt Vilber Lourmat Software version 12.9.

#### **3.2.4.2 Promoter reporter assay**

Promoter reporter assays [14] were used to evaluate ER subtype specific agonist and antagonist activity of the test compounds/extracts/fractions in HEK293 cells. These cells were transfected with either an ER $\alpha$  expression vector (pSG5-hER $\alpha$ ) or an ER $\beta$  expression vector (pSG5-hER $\beta$ ), as well as an ERE-containing promoter reporter plasmid (ERE.vit2.luc/ERE.PS2.luc) and a pGL2 basic empty vector. Fulvestrant (ICI), SM6Met, NP and F3 were tested in agonist (in the absence of E<sub>2</sub>) and antagonist (in the presence of E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup>M) mode for both ER subtypes. Promoter reporter assays were also used to (1) conduct dose response analysis (3.2.4.2.1), to obtain potency (EC<sub>50</sub>) and efficacy (fold inductions) of E<sub>2</sub> and selected polyphenols (Table 3.1), as well as for (2) addition and subtraction studies (3.2.4.2.2) and (3) to investigate synergism (3.2.4.2.3). These three studies were only conducted in agonist mode (in the absence of E<sub>2</sub>) for both ER subtypes.

HEK293 cells were seeded at a density of  $4 \times 10^6$  cells per sterile 10cm cell-binding plate (Corning<sup>®</sup>, USA) in **supplemented DMEM:HamF-12 (1:1)** medium, and allowed to settle overnight. The next day the plates were rinsed with pre-heated (37°C) PBS and the medium was changed to **supplemented phenol red free DMEM**. Cells were then transfected with a total of 6150ng plasmid DNA (150ng ER, 1500ng ERE and 4500ng pGL2basic) per 10cm plate using FugeneXtreme Transfection Reagent (Roche<sup>®</sup>, South Africa) according to manufacturer's specifications. 24 Hours after transfection, cells were re-plated at a cell density of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells per well in sterile 24 well binding plates (Corning<sup>®</sup>, USA). The following day the cells were treated with selected test compounds/extracts/fractions (at concentrations as indicated in results figure legends) for another 24 hours. Thereafter, the cells were rinsed with 500µl/well ice cold PBS and lysed with 50µl/well passive lysis buffer (10% (v/v) glycerol, 0.2% (v/v) Triton, 2.8% (v/v) Tris-phosphate EDTA and 1.44 mM EDTA) after which the cell lysates were frozen overnight at -20°C. Luciferase activity of cell lysates were measured in relative light units (RLU) using the luciferase assay system (Figure 3.2) and a Veritas microplate luminometer. Luciferase assay reagent (beetle luciferin) [Promega, USA] was added to cell lysates at a ratio of 5:1. RLU values were normalised using protein concentrations of lysates (5µl) determined with the Bradford method [15], measured at 595 nm with a BioTek<sup>®</sup> Gen5<sup>™</sup> spectrophotometer. This was done to ensure that any increase in luciferase activity was due to transactivation of the promoter reporter by the ligand activated receptor, and not due to plating error or an increase in cell number. Results were expressed as fold relative to solvent (set at 1).





**Figure 3.2: Mechanism of luciferase activity**

#### 3.2.4.2.1 Dose Response protocol

Dose response promoter reporter analysis was conducted with increasing concentrations of test compounds (individually and in fixed-ratio combinations). The effects were plotted using a XY line graph in Graphpad where the logarithm of the increasing concentrations of the tests compounds are plotted on the X axis and the response in RLU/mg protein on the Y axis. Data was analysed using a nonlinear regression curve fit with log (agonist) vs. response (three parameters). From the dose response curve, the potency ( $EC_{50}$  values) and efficacy (fold induction) of the test compounds (individually and in fixed-ratio combinations) were obtained.

#### 3.2.4.2.2 Addition and Subtraction protocol

F3 was reconstituted using the 7 major phenolic compounds identified in this F3 (Table 3.1) [3]. For the addition protocol, the concentrations of one of the seven compounds was individually increased to 10-fold (10x) or 100-fold (100x) the concentration in F3, respectively, whereas for the subtraction protocol, six of the seven phenolic compounds were prepared at 100-fold (100x) the concentration of these compounds in F3 with the concentration of only one compound per experiment decreased (subtracted) to the concentration in F3 (1x).

### 3.2.4.2.3 Synergism protocol

A well-known protocol to determine synergism is the isobologram method as demonstrated in Tallarida *et al.* [16]. In this protocol the EC<sub>50</sub> values, obtained from dose response curves (3.2.4.2.1), of the individual compounds to be evaluated would be plotted on the y and x – axes, respectively, with a line drawn between the two points. The EC<sub>50</sub> values of the individual compounds would then be combined in a fixed ratio manner, were the combination is increased and decreased exponentially at the fixed ratio, to determine the EC<sub>50</sub> of the combination. If the EC<sub>50</sub> value of the combination fell upon this line, the effect is considered to be additive. Values below the line are considered to be synergistic, while those above the line are considered antagonistic. For a more detailed description of the isobologram method, see section 2.3 in the literature review. In this study, mangiferin and luteolin were chosen to be investigated for synergism. Since the EC<sub>50</sub> of mangiferin could not be obtained, increasing concentrations of mangiferin was combined with the EC<sub>50</sub> of luteolin.

### 3.2.5 Whole cell binding

COS-1 cells were seeded at a cell density of  $1.5 \times 10^6$  cells in **supplemented phenol-red DMEM** in sterile 10cm plates and allowed to settle overnight. The next day the medium was changed to **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** and the cells were transfected with 150ng of either ER $\alpha$  (pSG5-hER $\alpha$ ) or ER $\beta$  (pSG5-hER $\beta$ ) expression vectors (see section 3.2.4.1) using FugeneXtreme Transfection Reagent according to manufacturer's specifications (3 $\mu$ l FugeneXtreme:1 $\mu$ g DNA). After 24 hours, the cells were re-plated in **supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** at a cell density of  $5 \times 10^4$  cells per well in sterile 24 well plates and again allowed to settle overnight. Thereafter the cells were rinsed three times with sterile pre-heated (37°C) PBS and incubated for 4 hours in **un-supplemented phenol-red free DMEM** with 20 nM radio-labeled estradiol (81Ci/mmol 2,4,6,7-<sup>3</sup>H-17- $\beta$ -estradiol

from Amersham Biosciences<sup>®</sup>) alone (total binding) or in combination with  $10^{-5}$ M of unlabelled estradiol (non-specific binding) to evaluate specific binding of mangiferin and luteolin at 100x their concentration in F3 (Table 3.1). After 4 hours, the cells were placed on ice and rinsed (three times for 15 minutes, respectively) with ice cold 0.2% PBS-BSA (bovine serum albumin from Sigma-Aldrich<sup>®</sup>). Cells were lysed with 100 $\mu$ l/well passive lysis buffer (10% (v/v) glycerol, 0.2% (v/v) Triton, 2.8% (v/v) Tris-phosphate EDTA and 1.44 mM EDTA) and shaken for 20 minutes at room temperature after which the cell lysates were frozen at -20°C.

Protein concentration of lysates (5 $\mu$ l) was determined using the Bradford method [15]. The remaining lysates were transferred to scintillation vials to which 1ml scintillation fluid per vial (Quickszint FLOW 2, Zinsser Analytic, South Africa) was added. Counts per minute (CPM) were determined using the Beckman LS3801 Beta-scintillation counter (Beckman<sup>®</sup>, South Africa) and results (CPM) were normalised to protein (mg/ml) values. Data was presented as specific binding which was determined by subtracting nonspecific binding from total binding (Specific Binding = Total Binding – Non-Specific Binding).

### 3.3 LC-MS/MS analysis

LC-MS/MS analyses were conducted at the Central Analytical Facilities (CAF) of Stellenbosch University on a Waters Acquity<sup>®</sup> ultra-performance liquid chromatography (UPLC) system connected to a Waters Synapt G2 quadrupole time-of-flight (QTOF) mass spectrometer (Milford, MA, USA). The UPLC system comprised a binary pump, an in-line degasser, column compartment and an Acquity photo diode array (PDA) detector. The mass spectrometer was equipped with an electrospray ionization (ESI) source and samples were ionized as described in Albrecht *et al.* [17]. A Waters UPLC BEH C18 column (2.1  $\times$  50 mm,

1.7  $\mu\text{m}$  particle size) was used for separation and 1  $\mu\text{l}$  of each sample was injected. The gradient program used was as indicated in Table 3.1.

**Table 3.1: LC-MS/MS gradient program**

Time (min)	Flow (ml/min)	% Solvent A H <sub>2</sub> O (0.1% formic acid)	% Solvent B Acetonitrile (0.1% formic acid)
Initial	0.350	90.0	10.0
0.20	0.350	90.0	10.0
14.00	0.350	66.0	43.0
15.00	0.350	40.0	60.0
15.10	0.350	90.0	10.0
17.00	0.350	90.0	10.0

### 3.4 NMR analysis

<sup>1</sup>H NMR spectra were recorded at the NMR unit in the Central Analytical Facilities (CAF) of Stellenbosch University. The samples were dried under vacuum, dissolved in DMSO-d<sub>6</sub> or pyridin-d<sub>5</sub>, respectively, and the proton spectra acquired on a 600MHz Agilent Unity Inova spectrometer utilizing an Inverse Detection Pulsed Field Gradient, 5mm probe and utilizing the default proton acquisition parameters of the VnmrJ 4.2 instrument software. The spectra were obtained at room temperature and the recorded data further processed and referenced against the residual DMSO signal set at 2.5ppm, using the Mestrenova 11 software package. Electrospray ionization mass spectrometry (ESI-MS) was used to determine the accurate mass of the molecular ion (M+1) in the positive ionization mode, thereby further confirming each structure molecular weight and molecular formula.

### 3.5 Statistical analysis

The Graph Pad Prism<sup>®</sup> v5.0.3.477 software was used to manipulate, graphically visualize and statistically analyse the data obtained from all assays. Bar graphs were statistically analysed

using One-way ANOVA and Dunnett's multiple comparison's test as post-test. Dose response graphs were fitted using a nonlinear regression curve fit with log (agonist) vs. response (three parameters) to determine potency ( $EC_{50}$ ) and efficacy (fold induction).  $P$ -values were represented as follow:  $P < 0.05$  (\*),  $P < 0.01$  (\*\*), and  $P < 0.001$  (\*\*\*), as indicated in results figure legends. Average  $\pm$  SEM is indicative of (n) independent experiments, as indicated in results figure legends.

### 3.6 References

1. Chen TR. In situ detection of mycoplasma contamination in cell cultures by fluorescent Hoechst 33258 stain. *Exp Cell Res.* 1977;104: 255–262.
2. Thorpe GHG, Kricka LJ, Moseley SB, Whitehead TP. Phenols as enhancers of the chemiluminescent horseradish peroxidase-luminol-hydrogen peroxide reaction: Application in luminescence-monitored enzyme immunoassays. *Clin Chem.* 1985;31: 1335–1341.
3. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia* nutraceutical extract, SM6Met. *PLoS One.* 2015;10: 1–22.
4. Holst B, Williamson G. Nutrients and phytochemicals: from bioavailability to bioefficacy beyond antioxidants. *Curr Opin Biotechnol.* 2008;19: 73–82.
5. Mortimer MF. Isolation and identification of compounds conferring phytoestrogenic activity to *Cyclopia* extracts. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2014.
6. Ananingsih VK, Sharma A, Zhou W. Green tea catechins during food processing and storage: A review on stability and detection. *Food Res Int.* 2013;50: 469–479.
7. Terra Universal I, editor. Desiccator Storage : The Missing Link in the Manufacturing Chain. *Advanced Applications in Contamination Control's A2C2.* Fullerton, USA; 2015.
8. Twentyman PR, Luscombe M. A study of some variables in a tetrazolium dye (MTT) based assay for cell growth and chemosensitivity. *Br J Cancer.* 1987;56: 279–285.
9. Karmakar S, Jin Y, Nagaich AK. Interaction of glucocorticoid receptor (GR) with estrogen receptor (ER)  $\alpha$  and activator protein 1 (AP1) in dexamethasone-mediated interference of ER $\alpha$  activity. *J Biol Chem.* 2013;288: 24020–24034.

10. Flouriot G, Brand H, Denger S, Metivier R, Kos M, Reid G, *et al.* Identification of a new isoform of the human estrogen receptor-alpha (hER-alpha) that is encoded by distinct transcripts and that is able to repress hER-alpha activation function 1. *EMBO J.* 2000;19: 4688–4700.
11. Hall JM, McDonnell DP, Korach KS. Allosteric regulation of estrogen receptor structure, function, and coactivator recruitment by different estrogen response elements. *Mol Endocrinol.* 2002;16: 469–486.
12. Belandia B, Parker MG. Functional interaction between the p160 coactivator proteins and the transcriptional enhancer factor family of transcription factors. *J Biol Chem.* 2000;275: 30801–30805.
13. Sambrook J, Fritsch E F, Maniatis T. *Molecular cloning.* New York: Cold spring harbor laboratory press ; 1989.
14. Nguyen VT, Morange M, Bensaude O. Firefly luciferase luminescence assays using scintillation counters for quantitation in transfected mammalian cells. *Anal Biochem.* 1988;171: 404–408.
15. Bradford MM. A rapid and sensitive method for the quantitation of microgram quantities of protein utilizing the principle of protein-dye binding. *Anal Biochem.* 1976;72: 248–254.
16. Tallarida RJ, Kimmel HL, Holtzman SG. Theory and statistics of detecting synergism between two active drugs: cocaine and buprenorphine. *Psychopharmacology (Berl).* 1997;133: 378–382.
17. Albrecht CF, Stander MA, Grobbelaar MC, Colling J, Kossmann J, Hills PN, *et al.* LC–MS-based metabolomics assists with quality assessment and traceability of wild and cultivated plants of *Sutherlandia frutescens* (Fabaceae). *South African J Bot.* 2012;82: 33–45.

## **Chapter 4: Optimisation and Validation of Experimental Systems**

## 4.1. Introduction

Recently, the concept of combinatorial or synergistic drug interactions has received considerable attention due to the discovery and understanding of novel phytoestrogenic nutraceuticals for both the treatment of menopausal symptoms as well as the prevention of estrogen-induced breast cancer [1–3]. Due to the increased risk of developing breast cancer associated with hormone replacement therapy, women are seeking alternatives such as plant extracts containing high levels of phytoestrogens, that have been shown to alleviate menopausal symptoms with possible fewer side effects and risks [1,4–6]. However, more research is required to fully understand how the phytoestrogens in complex plant extracts interact to exert their favourable combinatorial or synergistic effects.

Currently, the most common method to investigate drug interactions and to determine possible synergism is the isobole method [3,7–10]. This method requires establishing the potencies of the individual drugs involved, as well as the potencies of fixed drug combinations. To achieve accurate drug potencies, various factors need to be considered since optimal and accurate results are not only dependent on the concentration and effect of the drug, but also on the sensitivity of the experimental system (cell type, target e.g. receptors or response elements, and assay) [11–14].

The current project investigates F3, one of the fractions of the phytoestrogenic nutraceutical, SM6Met [15]. Specifically, as the current project aims to evaluate the interaction and possible synergistic contribution of the 7 individual major phenolic compounds identified in F3 to the favourable estrogenic profile of this fraction, optimisation of the experimental model was required. For this reason, the cell lines used in the experimental model were characterised and optimisation of the experimental protocols were investigated to increase



sensitivity. Following optimisation, the experimental protocol was validated using SM6Met and fractions thereof [15].

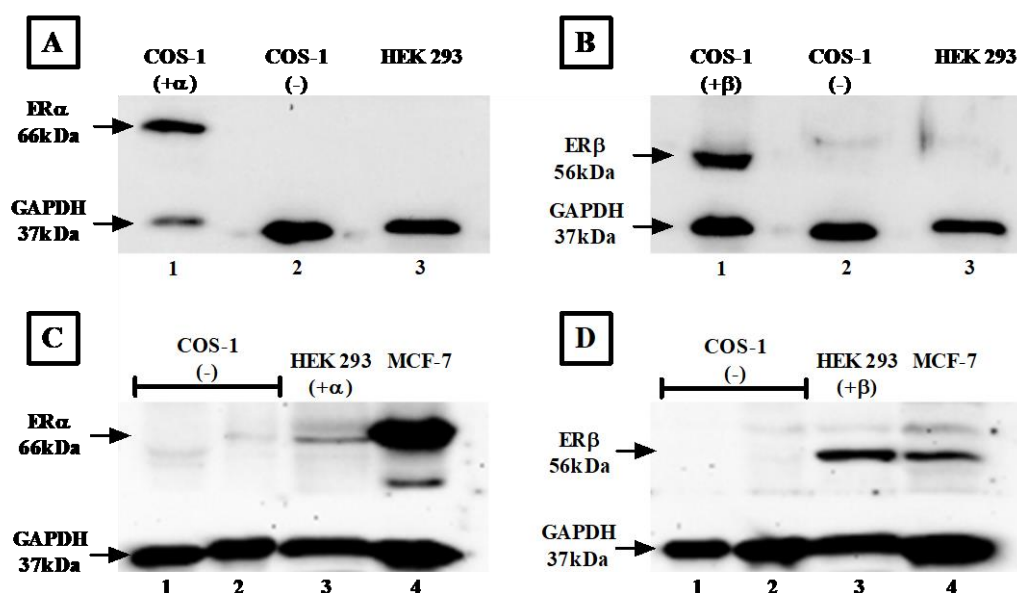
## 4.2. Results and Discussion

### 4.2.1. Characterisation of cell lines

The two cell lines used, human embryonic kidney cells (HEK293) and human breast cancer cells (MCF-7 BUS), were chosen based on specific characteristics needed to aid in investigating the estrogenicity of compounds/extracts/fractions. The HEK293 cells do not express any endogenous ER $\alpha$  or ER $\beta$  [16], and for this reason was used to investigate ER subtype specific activity through separate transfections with expression vectors for ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , respectively. Since this cell line is of human origin [17], it is thought to be a more physiologically relevant system for investigation of the expression of human ER. On the other hand, the MCF-7 BUS cells endogenously expresses both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  [18], and is therefore a physiologically relevant system for the investigation of the effect of the compounds/extracts/fractions on breast cancer cell proliferation.

Western blot analysis was performed to validate the ER status of the HEK293 and MCF-7 BUS cells. As expected, the HEK293 cells did not express any endogenous ER $\alpha$  or ER $\beta$  (Figure 4.1 A & B, lane 3), whereas the MCF-7 BUS cells expressed both ER subtypes (Figure 4.1 C & D, lane 4). Furthermore, it was observed that the intensity of the ER $\alpha$  (66kDa) protein band (Figure 4.1 C, lane 4) was more prominent than the intensity of the ER $\beta$  (56kDa) protein band (Figure 4.1 D, lane 4), suggesting higher expression of ER $\alpha$  than ER $\beta$  in the MCF-7 BUS cell line. However, since different antibodies were used for the ER $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  subtypes, albeit from the same company, affinity of the antibodies for the respected

epitopes should not be assumed to be identical. Nonetheless, literature has also shown higher expression of ER $\alpha$  in the MCF-7 breast cancer cell line [18].



**Figure 4.1: Characterization of the human embryonic kidney (HEK293) and the human breast cancer (MCF-7 BUS) cell lines.** **A & B:** Western blot analysis confirms the absence of the estrogen receptors subtypes (ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ ) in the HEK293 cell line. Un-transfected COS-1 cells, indicated as COS-1 (-), were used as negative control and COS-1 cells, transfected with either pSG5-hER $\alpha$  or pSG5-hER $\beta$ , indicated as COS-1 (+ $\alpha$ ) and COS-1 (+ $\beta$ ), respectively, were used as positive controls. **(A)** ER $\alpha$  (MC-20):sc-542 was diluted 1:500 and **(B)** ER $\beta$  (H-150):sc-8974 was diluted 1:1000. Results were visualised on x-ray film. **C & D:** Western blot analysis confirms the presence of both estrogen receptor subtypes (ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ ) in the MCF-7 BUS cell line. Un-transfected COS-1 cells, indicated as COS-1 (-), were used as negative control and HEK293 cells transfected with either pSG5-hER $\alpha$  or pSG5-hER $\beta$ , indicated as HEK (+ $\alpha$ ) and HEK (+ $\beta$ ), respectively, were used as positive controls. **(C)** ER $\alpha$  (ab75635) and **(D)** ER $\beta$  (ab3576) were both diluted 1:400. Results were visualised on a MyECL Imager. **A, B, C & D:** Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) was used as a protein loading control.

From the Western blot results we may conclude that the HEK293 cells do not contain the ER subtypes and is therefore an ideal cell line to investigate and compare the transactivational activity of the phytoestrogenic extracts and fractions via the respective ER subtypes. In addition, this cell line is generally considered a good model for transactivation studies [19]. In contrast to the HEK293 cell line, the MCF-7 BUS cells endogenously expresses both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , and are thus an ideal system for investigating the effects of the phytoestrogenic extracts and fractions in a physiological relevant cell environment.

## **4.2.2. Optimisations of assays used to test estrogenic activity**

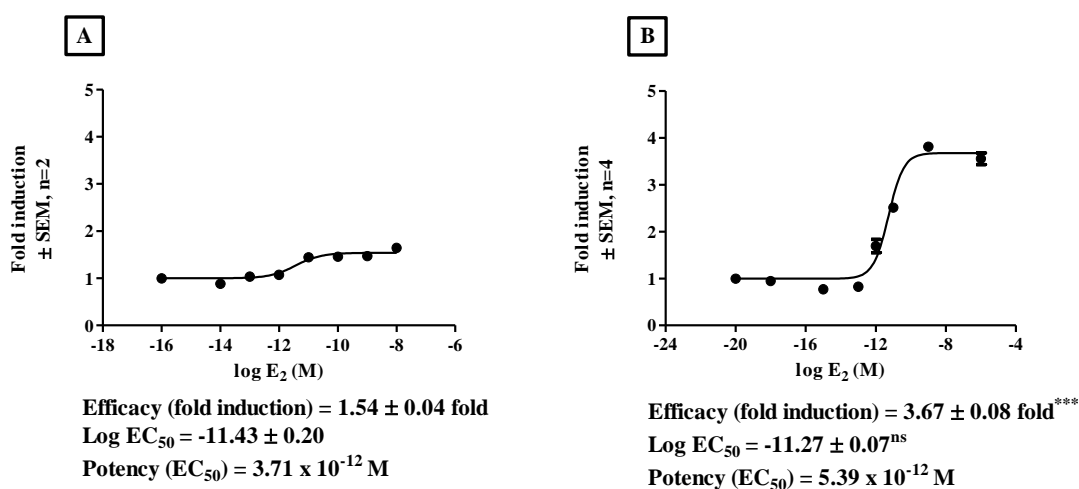
Promoter reporter and cell proliferation assays were previously used to evaluate the favourable estrogenic profile of SM6Met. Specifically, previous studies demonstrated that SM6Met displayed ER $\alpha$  antagonism and ER $\beta$  agonism in both COS-1 and HEK293 cells, and inhibited estrogen induced MCF-7 BUS breast cancer cell proliferation [15,20]. Therefore, following from the SM6Met studies, the same assays were used to investigate a fraction (F3) of SM6Met, which displayed augmented ER $\beta$  agonist activity [15]. However, no estrogenic activity was observed with any of the individual major phenolic compounds in F3 [15], even though some of these compounds displayed estrogenic activity in other studies [21–23].

To determine interaction and possible synergism of the phenolic compounds identified in SM6Met F3, a robust system, with high sensitivity, is required to detect small changes in the inflection point of a dose response curve. Consequently, the assays used in the current study, cell proliferation in MCF-7 BUS cells and promoter reporter assay in HEK293 cells, required optimisation to increase sensitivity, specifically by obtaining optimal efficacies (fold induction) and accurate potencies (EC<sub>50</sub>). Estradiol (E<sub>2</sub>), an endogenous ER ligand that binds to both ER subtypes with high affinity [24] and promotes proliferation of breast cancer cell lines [25], was used as positive control for the optimisation of both assays.

### **4.2.2.1. Optimisation of cell proliferation assay protocol: investigating different cell numbers, tissue culture plate sizes and various induction times**

The proliferation assay was optimised from a previous cell proliferation assay laboratory protocol [15], which entailed using 96 well plates with a cell density of  $1 \times 10^4$  cells/well. The MCF-7 BUS cells were induced with increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> for a total of 72 hours (3 days), and produced an efficacy of only  $1.54 \pm 0.04$  fold (Figure 4.2 A). An experimental system with a higher efficacy would ultimately be more sensitive to small drug

induced changes, and subsequently produce a more accurate potency. This increase in sensitivity is essential when investigating interaction and possible synergism of complex mixtures such as in SM6Met and its fractions. Therefore, a literature search for other protocols with increased sensitivity was conducted. One of the highest efficacies found during the literature search was in a study by Karmakar *et al.* [26], where the authors achieved a 5-fold induction with  $10^{-9}$  M  $E_2$  using 6 well plates ( $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well) and inducing for a total of 120 hours (5 days). Since the differences between the two protocols were: (1) total induction time, (2) tissue culture plate sizes and (3) cell number per surface area, these three conditions (Table 4.1) were investigated in order to achieve increased efficacy in our cell proliferation assay.



**Figure 4.2: Cell proliferation studies comparing potency ( $EC_{50}$ ) and efficacy (fold induction) of (A) a previously used laboratory protocol and (B) a new post-optimisation protocol. (A) MCF-7 BUS cells were plated at a cell density of  $1 \times 10^4$  cell/well in 96 well plates and induced with increasing concentrations of  $E_2$  for a total of 3 days. (B) MCF-7 BUS cells were plated at a cell density of  $1 \times 10^5$  cell/well in a 6 well plate and induced with increasing concentrations of  $E_2$  for a total of 5 days. Curve fitting: nonlinear regression with log (agonist) vs. response (three parameters). Statistical analysis: unpaired t-test to compare efficacy and log  $EC_{50}$  of (A) a previously used laboratory protocol and (B) a new post-optimisation protocol, \* $P < 0.05$ , \*\* $P < 0.001$ , \*\*\* $P < 0.0001$  and  $^{ns}$  no significant difference.**

Cells were either induced for a total of 72 hours, from previous laboratory protocol (Figure 4.3 A, C, E & G), or 120 hours, from the Karmakar protocol (Figure 4.3 B, D & F). Various cell densities were also investigated with different tissue culture plate sizes: 96 well plates with  $1 \times 10^4$  cells/well, from previous laboratory protocol (Figure 4.3 A & B), 24 well plates

with  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/well (Figure 4.3 C & D) and 6 well plates with either  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well, from the Karmakar protocol (Figure 4.3 E & F), or  $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells/well (Figure 4.3 G). Increasing concentrations of  $E_2$  ( $10^{-11}$ ,  $10^{-9}$  and  $10^{-6}$  M) was used as a positive control. Since  $10^{-9}$  M  $E_2$  was the point where the curve plateaued in Figure 4.2 A,  $10^{-9}$  M  $E_2$  fold induction for the three conditions were summarised in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1: Comparison of  $E_2$  ( $10^{-9}$  M) fold induction using different optimisation conditions (total induction time, plate size and cell density).**

Plate size	Cells/well	$10^{-9}$ M $E_2$ fold induction after 72 hours (3 days)	$10^{-9}$ M $E_2$ fold induction after 120 hours (5 days)
96 well	$1 \times 10^4$	$1.07 \pm 0.03$	$1.61 \pm 0.02$ ***
24 well	$5 \times 10^4$	$1.23 \pm 0.02$ ###	$1.45 \pm 0.01$ ***,###
6 well	$1 \times 10^5$	$1.49 \pm 0.10$ ###	$3.06 \pm 0.05$ ***,###
6 well	$2.5 \times 10^5$	$1.46 \pm 0.03$ <sup>ns</sup>	-

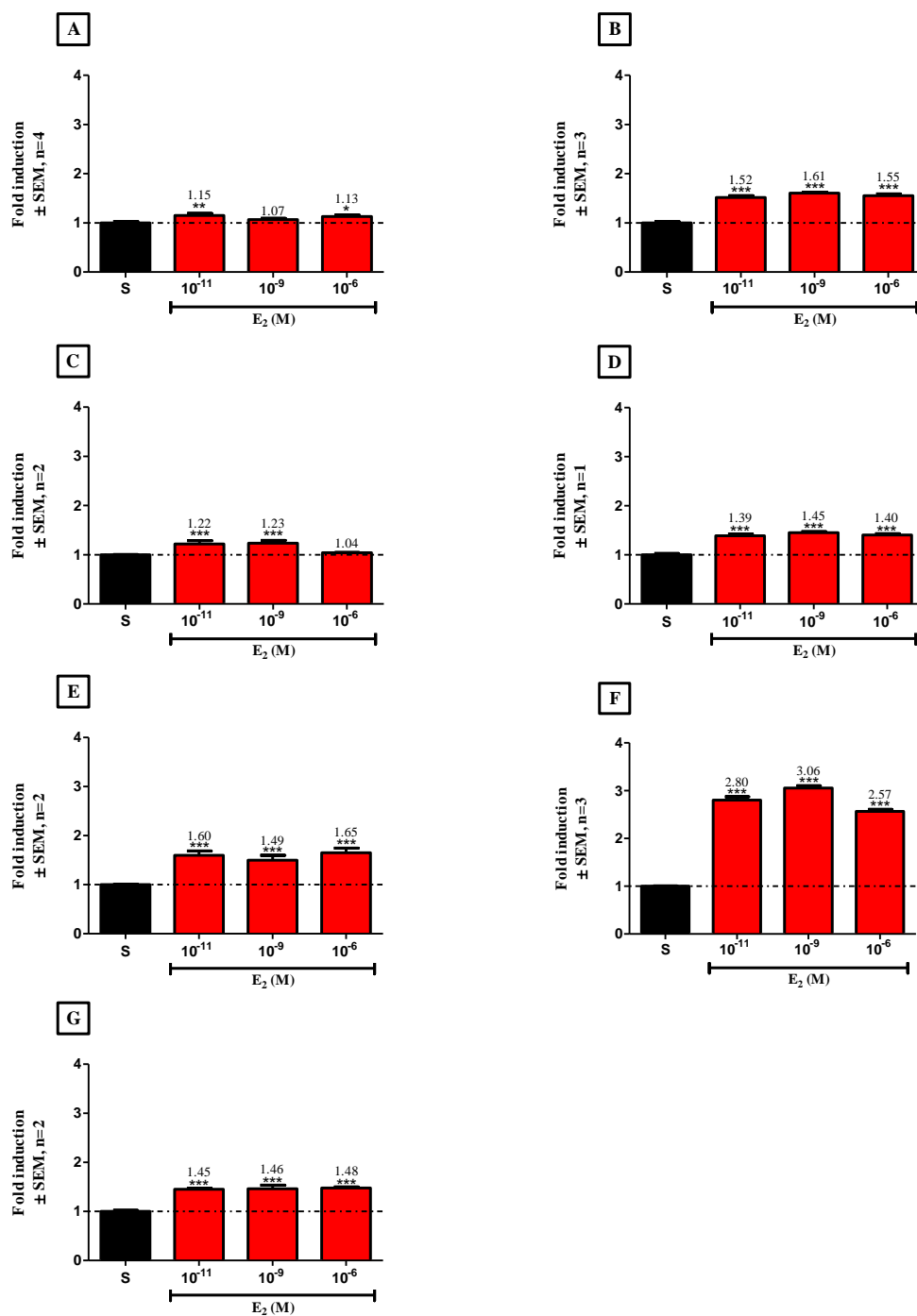
Statistical analysis: unpaired t-test, 72 hour (3 day) protocol vs 120 hour (5 day) protocol \*P <0.05, \*\*P <0.001, \*\*\*P <0.0001, 96well vs 24 well vs 6 well plates #P <0.05, ##P <0.001, ###P <0.0001 and <sup>ns</sup>no significant difference.

The results from Table 4.1 and Figure 4.3 suggest that the longer induction time period of 120 hours (Figure 4.3 B, D & F) achieved significantly ( $P < 0.0001$ ) higher fold induction throughout compared to the short induction time period of 72 hours (Figure 4.3 A, C, E & G). Furthermore, the different plate sizes with their allocated cell densities were compared within each of the induction time periods (72 hours and 120 hours). Within the 72 hours protocol, there was a significant increase ( $P < 0.0001$ ) in fold induction associated with the increase in surface area of the cell culture plates (Figure 4.3 A, C & E). There was, however, no significant difference in fold induction between the different cell densities ( $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well and  $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells/well) in the 6 well plates (Table 4.1). Within the 120 hour protocol, there was a significant ( $P < 0.0001$ ) decrease in fold induction between the 96 well and 24 well plates, and a significant ( $P < 0.0001$ ) increase in fold induction when comparing the 6 well plate to the 96 well and 24 well plates. The highest cell proliferation induction,  $3.06 \pm 0.05$  fold, was observed with the 6 well plates ( $1 \times 10^5$  cells/well) using the longer induction time

period (Table 4.1; Figure 4.3 F). Accurate results for the 6 well plates ( $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells/well) using the longer induction time period could not be obtained, since the cells were already 100% confluent on day 3 and began to lift from the plate surface (results not shown in Figure 4.3).

Although the 3.06-fold induction of proliferation obtained from  $10^{-9}$  M  $E_2$  (Figure 4.3 F) was lower than that of Karmakar *et al.* [26], it was a significant improvement compared to the efficacy (1.07-fold) achieved with the previous laboratory protocol (Figure 4.3 A) and the other optimisation conditions tested (Figure 4.3 B, C, D, E & G). Cell density, plate size and induction time period were thus changed accordingly and a dose response curve was produced for the post-optimised protocol to compare potency ( $EC_{50}$ ) and efficacy (fold induction) to that of the pre-optimised protocol (Figure 4.2). Although the potencies for the pre- and post-optimised protocols were very similar and not significantly different ( $3.71 \times 10^{-12}$  M and  $5.37 \times 10^{-12}$  M, respectively), the efficacy obtained with the post-optimised protocol (Figure 4.2 B), was more than double and significantly different ( $P < 0.0001$ ) from the efficacy obtained with the pre-optimised protocol (Figure 4.2 A) at  $3.67 \pm 0.08$  fold vs  $1.54 \pm 0.04$  fold, respectively.

As optimisation of the cell proliferation assay revealed that the Karmakar protocol [26] provided a significant overall improvement in cell proliferation efficacy, compared to the previous protocol, cell density, plate size and total induction time was changed accordingly for the validation study (4.2.3.1). The post-optimised protocol produced an efficacy twice that of the pre-optimised protocol, resulting in a more sensitive system, which, as stated previously, is important when investigating drug interactions and possible synergism.



**Figure 4.3: Optimisation of cell proliferation studies.** Different cell densities, plate sizes and induction time periods were investigated with increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> (10<sup>-11</sup>, 10<sup>-9</sup> and 10<sup>-6</sup> M) to determine optimal MCF-7 BUS cell proliferation conditions. **A & B:** 96 well plates (1 x 10<sup>4</sup> cells/well) with an induction time of 3 days (**A**) or 5 days (**B**). **C & D:** 24 well plates (5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cells/well) with an induction time of 3 days (**C**) or 5 days (**D**). **E & F:** 6 well plates (1 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells/well) with an induction time of 3 days (**E**) or 5 days (**F**). **G:** 6 well plates (2.5 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells/well) with an induction time of 3 days. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \* P < 0.05, \*\* P < 0.001, \*\*\* P < 0.0001.

#### 4.2.2.2. Optimisation of Promoter Reporter Assay

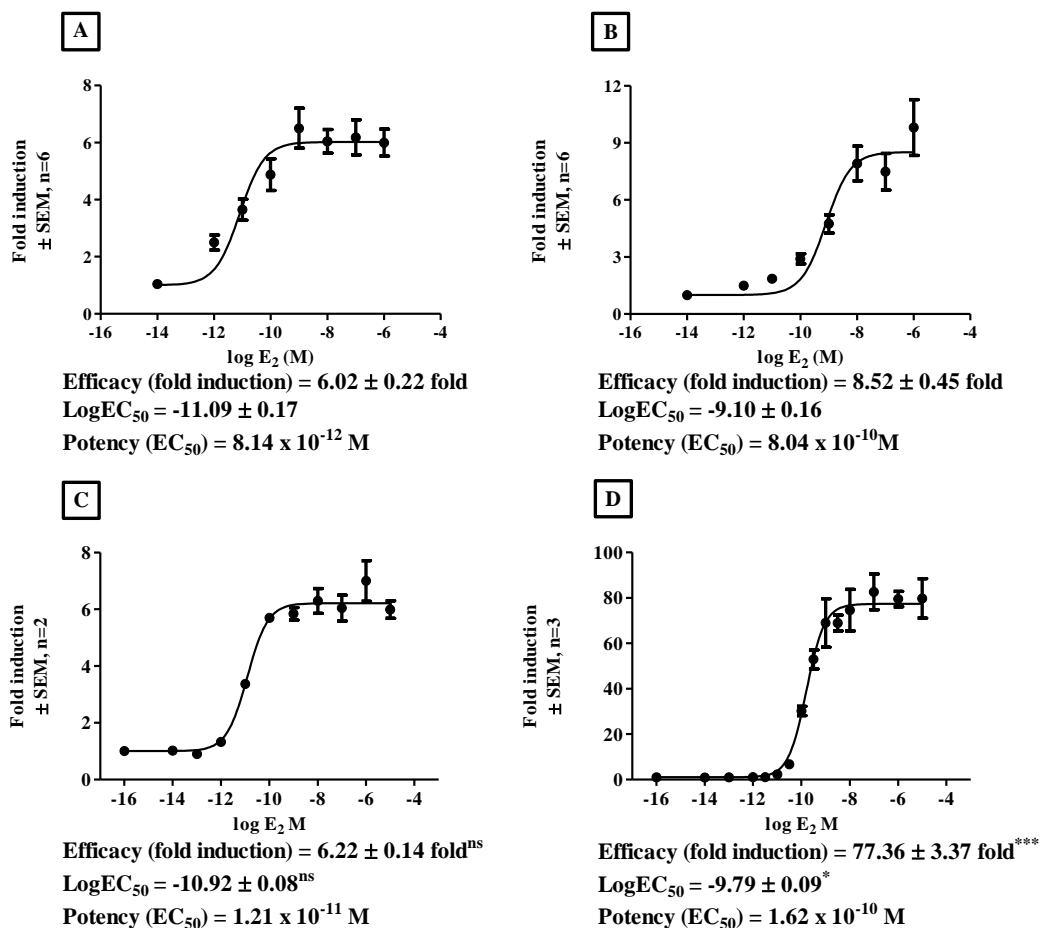
Previous studies in our group investigated the estrogenicity of *Cyclopia* extracts and phenolic compounds using promoter reporter assays in COS-1 cells, an African green monkey kidney cell line [20,27]. In addition, Mortimer *et al.* [16], focused on the optimisation of a promoter-reporter assay for determining the estrogenicity of the SM6Met extract and phenolic compounds in HEK293 cells, a human embryonic kidney cell line. This cell line is thought to be a more physiologically relevant model for human related studies, since it is a human cell line whereas the COS-1 cell line is of monkey origin. Mortimer's protocol entailed transfecting HEK293 cells with either hER $\alpha$  or hER $\beta$ , and an ERE.vit2.luc promoter reporter construct, which contained two ERE sequences obtained from the vitellogenin gene expressed in ovipare species [16,28,29]. Results obtained from Mortimer's study demonstrated the ability of E<sub>2</sub> (10<sup>-9</sup> M) treatment to induce the promoter-reporter construct (ERE.vit2.luc) by 3.1-fold and 6.3-fold via ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , respectively [15,16].

As mentioned before, a higher efficacy would ideally result in a more sensitive system to investigate drug interaction and determine possible synergism. Therefore, in the current study, a second ERE-containing promoter reporter construct (ERE.PS2.luc) was investigated. This ERE-containing reporter construct consists of an ERE sequence obtained from the human PS2 gene expressed in breast cancer cells [12][30], and previously demonstrated good transactivation activity via the ER subtypes (predominantly ER $\alpha$ ), however, the results varied between different cell types [11–14,31]. For example, 10<sup>-9</sup> M E<sub>2</sub>-induced transactivation of the PS2-ERE via ER $\alpha$  resulted in a 2-fold induction in Cho-K1 cells [11], an approximate 5-fold induction in COS-1 cells [12], and around 12-fold induction in Hela cells [31]. Thus, in the current project, the E<sub>2</sub>-induced transactivation of ERE.vit2.luc and ERE.PS2.luc via ER $\alpha$ , as well as ER $\beta$ , was investigated and the obtained efficacies and potencies, specifically in the HEK293 cells, were compared.



The two EREs showed similar results for ER $\alpha$  (Figure 4.4 A & C), with no significant difference between the efficacies ( $6.02 \pm 0.22$  fold for ERE.vit2.luc and  $6.22 \pm 0.14$  fold for ERE.PS2.luc) or potencies ( $8.14 \times 10^{-12}$  M and  $1.21 \times 10^{-11}$  M for ERE.vit2.luc and ERE.PS2.luc, respectively). Moreover, ER $\beta$  (Figure 4.4 B & D) displayed a small but significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) difference between the potencies ( $8.04 \times 10^{-10}$  M for ERE.vit2.luc and  $1.62 \times 10^{-10}$  M for ERE.PS2.luc). The efficacy of ERE.PS2.luc induction via ER $\beta$ , on the other hand, was a significantly ( $P < 0.0001$ ) 9 times higher than that of ERE.vit2.luc ( $77.36 \pm 3.37$  fold vs.  $8.52 \pm 0.45$  fold, respectively).

It is apparent from these results in HEK293 cells that the sensitivity of E<sub>2</sub> transactivation of the ERE.PS2.luc system via ER $\beta$  was more sensitive when compared to other studies, which used different cell lines, as well as when compared to the study of Mortimer *et al.* [15], which used the same cell line but a different ERE [11–13,31]. These results further emphasise how important it is to take various factors, like cell types or response elements, into account when testing drug interactions, and to not only focus on drug concentrations. Furthermore, in the current study the ERE.PS2.luc system using HEK293 cells will be an ideal system to investigate the interaction and contribution of the phenolic compounds to the estrogenic activity of F3, which was shown to display robust ER $\beta$  transactivation [15].



**Figure 4.4: Promoter reporter studies investigating ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  dose response curves. A & B (pre-optimised protocol):** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$  (A) or pSG5-hER $\beta$  (B), and vit2.ERE.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-12}$  –  $10^{-6}$  M). **C & D (post-optimised protocol):** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$  (C) or pSG5-hER $\beta$  (D), and PS2.ERE.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-14}$  –  $10^{-5}$  M). **Curve fitting:** nonlinear regression with log (agonist) vs. response (three parameters). **Statistical analysis:** unpaired t-test, pre-optimised protocol vs post-

#### 4.2.3. Validation of optimised experimental protocols

In previous studies, Mfenyana *et al.* [15] and Visser *et al.* [20], SM6Met was shown to be an ER $\beta$  agonist, an ER $\alpha$  antagonist and an inhibitor of E<sub>2</sub>-induced breast cancer cell proliferation. This extract (SM6Met) was subsequently separated into two fractions, namely, a polar (PF) and a non-polar fraction (NPF) [15]. Furthermore, the NPF, displaying the highest phytoestrogenic activity, was further fractionated into three fractions with fraction 3 (F3) displaying the highest estrogenic activity via ER $\beta$ , when compared to the other NPF fractions [15].

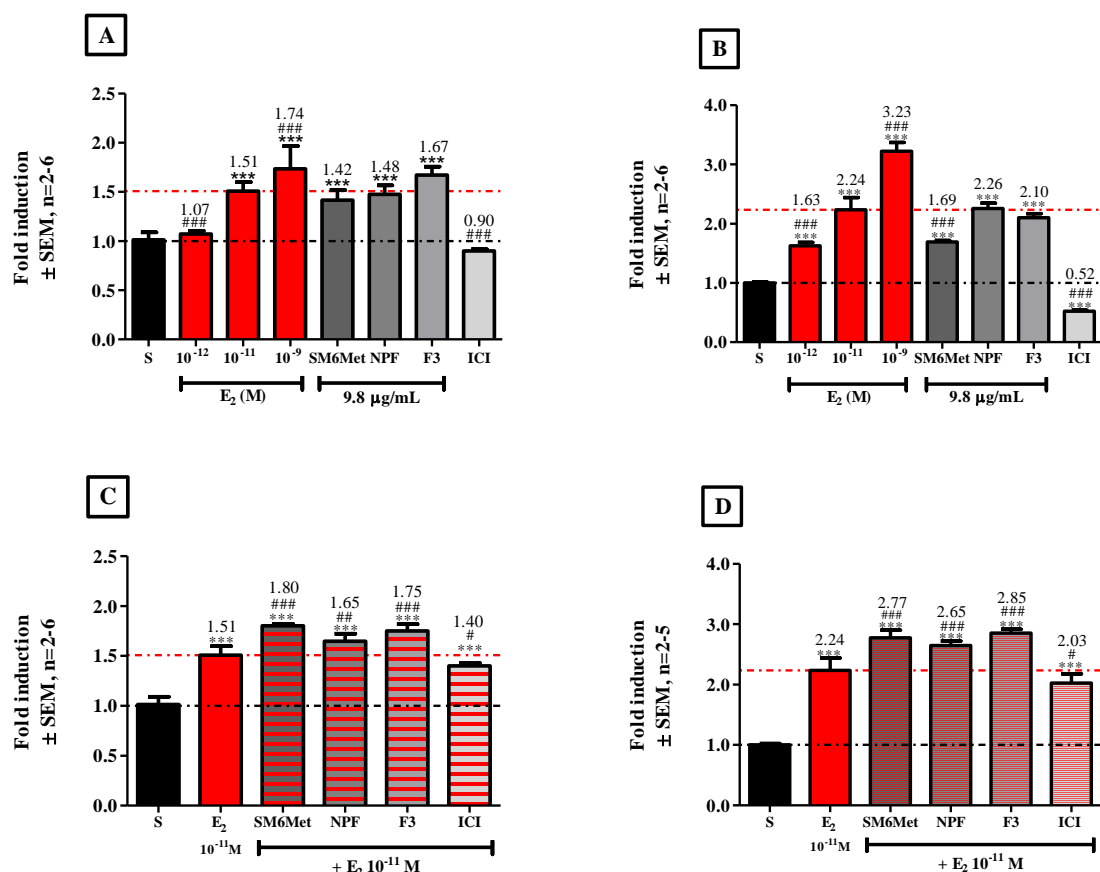
Whilst the main focus of the current study is to investigate the contribution of the 7 major phenolic compounds previously identified in F3 to the estrogenic activity of F3, it forms part of a larger, ongoing investigation to identify the active components of the *Cyclopia* extracts. Therefore, to validate the protocols optimised in the current study, results from the optimised protocols were compared to that of previous laboratory protocols (pre-optimised protocols) used to obtain results in previous studies [15,20]. The SM6Met extract, the NPF and F3 were thus tested using the pre- and post-optimised protocols for both the proliferation assay and the promoter reporter assay. E<sub>2</sub> was used as an agonist standard whereas fulvestrant (ICI 182,780) was used as antagonist standard.

#### **4.2.3.1. Validation of optimised proliferation protocol using SM6Met, NPF and F3**

The SM6Met extract and the NPF have previously been shown to antagonise E<sub>2</sub>-induced cell proliferation of MCF-7 BUS cells, whereas F3 displayed no antagonistic activity. Furthermore, only F3, but not SM6Met and the NPF, displayed significant agonist activity [15]. To validate the optimised experimental protocol for MCF-7 BUS cell proliferation, the results obtained were compared to that of previous studies.

The optimised cell proliferation protocol elicited a  $3.23 \pm 0.08$  fold induction with  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub> (Figure 4.5 B) in comparison to the  $1.74 \pm 0.07$  fold obtained with the pre-optimised protocol (Figure 4.5 A), which supports the results obtained during the optimisation procedure (Figure 4.3 F). In the absence of E<sub>2</sub>, both the pre- and post-optimised protocols showed significant agonist activity for SM6Met, the NPF and F3. However, the activity of the extracts/fractions, in both the pre- and post-optimised protocol were not significantly different from that of  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>, with the exception of SM6Met in the post-optimised protocol, which displayed a significantly ( $P < 0.0001$ ) lower activity than  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>. As expected, fulvestrant (ICI 182,780) showed no agonist activity.

In antagonist mode, none of the extracts or fractions displayed antagonism of  $10^{-11}$ M E<sub>2</sub>, with either (pre-and post-optimised) protocol (Figure 4.5 C & D). Fulvestrant (ICI 182,780), however, did display significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) antagonism.

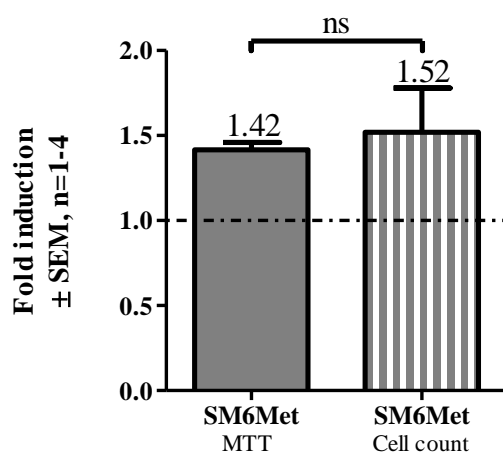


**Figure 4.5: Cell proliferation studies investigating the agonist (A & B) and antagonist (C & D) activity of SM6Met, NPF, F3 & fulvestrant (ICI 182,780).** Cells were induced with solvent (S), increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> (10<sup>-12</sup>, 10<sup>-11</sup> & 10<sup>-9</sup> M) as agonist standard, SM6Met, NPF and F3 (9.8µg/ml), and ICI 182,780 (10<sup>-10</sup> M) as antagonist standard, both in (A & B) agonist (absence of E<sub>2</sub>) and (C & D) antagonist (presence of E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup> M) mode. Both the pre-optimised laboratory protocol (A & C) and the post-optimised laboratory protocol (B & D) were investigated. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black dotted line), \* $P < 0.05$ , \*\* $P < 0.001$ , \*\*\* $P < 0.0001$ , and extracts/fractions/compounds compared to E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup> M (red dotted line) # $P < 0.05$ , ## $P < 0.001$ , ### $P < 0.0001$ .

Validation of the optimised cell proliferation assay indicated that this system was still not sensitive enough to obtain accurate results, since even after optimisation, F3 only displayed a induction of 2-fold. In addition, the favourable estrogenic profile of SM6Met previously reported was also not present, since neither SM6Met nor NPF displayed antagonism of E<sub>2</sub>-

induced cell proliferation [15,20]. Consequently, the results were not comparable to previous studies.

Furthermore, in the current study proliferative activity (measured with the MTT assay) was also compared to cell viability (measured with viable cell counting), since polyphenols have been shown to influence mitochondrial activity and, as MTT is metabolised via mitochondrial enzymes, may interfere with the MTT assay [32,33]. No difference between proliferative activity and cell viability (Figure 4.6), upon SM6Met induction was observed, which corresponds with similar results from Mortimer's study [16].



**Figure 4.6: Comparison of cell proliferation vs cell viability.** MCF-7 BUS cells were induced with 9.8µg/ml SM6Met to investigate and compare the effect of the extract on proliferative activity (MTT assay) and cell viability (cell count). Statistical analysis: t-test, solvent control set to 1 (black dotted line), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.001, \*\*\*P<0.0001, <sup>ns</sup>no significant difference.

#### 4.2.3.2. Validation of optimised promoter reporter protocol using SM6Met, NPF and F3

Following optimisation of the promoter reporter assay, a more sensitive system was established for ERβ by using the ERE.PS2.luc promoter reporter construct. To ensure that the favourable F3 characteristic of robust ERβ agonism, previously identified by Mortimer *et al.* [15], was maintained with the post-optimised protocol, F3 activity was compared in both the pre- and post-optimised protocols using both ER subtypes. Furthermore, in order to compare results from the current study to that of previous studies, SM6Met and the NPF were also

included to validate the pre- and post-optimised protocols in both agonist (Figure 4.7) and antagonist mode (Figure 4.8).

Due to the significant ( $P < 0.0001$ ) difference in efficacy observed between ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$  for the post-optimised protocol (Figure 4.4 C & D), the activity of the compounds/extracts/fractions were compared to increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-11}$ ,  $10^{-10}$  &  $10^{-9}$  M) within each ER subtype protocol.

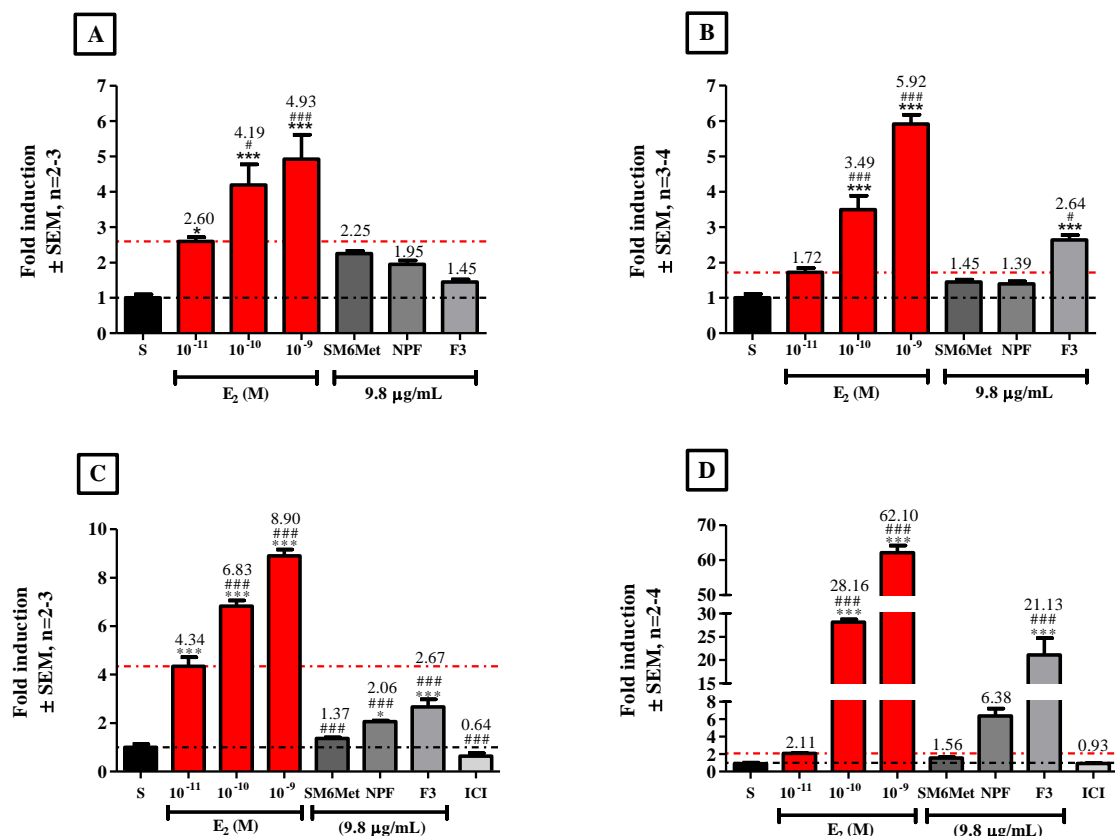
The pre-optimised protocol, using ERE.vit2.luc, presented similar results compared to a previous study done by Mortimer *et al.* [15], with F3 displaying robust and significant ( $P < 0.0001$ ) ER $\beta$  agonist activity at  $2.64 \pm 0.13$  fold induction (Figure 4.7 B) and no significant ER $\alpha$  activity (Figure 4.7 A).

The post-optimised protocol, using ERE.PS2.luc, however, provided a significantly ( $P < 0.0001$ ) 10.5-fold increase in sensitivity via ER $\beta$ , with  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub> producing a  $62.10 \pm 2.05$  fold induction (Figure 4.7 D) compared to the pre-optimised protocol, which only produced a  $5.92 \pm 0.26$  fold induction (Figure 4.7 B). Similarly, the post-optimised protocol via ER $\alpha$  also displayed a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 1.8-fold increase in sensitivity with  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub>.

In the post-optimised protocol, F3 also showed a significantly ( $P < 0.0001$ ) more robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity compared to the pre-optimised protocol. This increase in sensitivity in the post-optimised protocol is not only apparent when comparing absolute fold induction ( $21.13 \pm 3.62$  vs  $2.64 \pm 0.13$  fold induction), but also when comparing F3 to  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> (10 vs 1.5 fold induction). Despite the increase in sensitivity in the post-optimised protocol, the rank order of F3 activation via ER $\beta$  remains similar, with F3 displaying comparable induction to that of  $10^{-10}$  M E<sub>2</sub> with both protocols (Figure 4.7 B & D).

The increased sensitivity with ER $\alpha$  observed in the post-optimised protocol has, however, now resulted in F3 displaying significant ( $P < 0.0001$ ) ER $\alpha$  agonist activity, in contrast to what was observed in the pre-optimised protocol and the Mortimer study [15]. Nonetheless, when comparing F3 fold induction to  $10^{-11}$  M E $_2$ , it was significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) lower in the post-optimised protocol. In addition, in both protocols F3 induction is around 0.6-fold that of  $10^{-11}$  M E $_2$  (Figure 4.7 A & C).

SM6Met and the NPF, on the other hand, displayed no significant agonist activity with either ER subtype for the pre-optimised protocol when compared to respective solvent treatments. These results did not correspond with the findings of Mortimer *et al.* [15], which showed significant ER $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  agonist activity with SM6Met and significant ER $\beta$  agonist activity with the NPF. With the post-optimised protocol, SM6Met displayed no significant agonist activity with either ER subtype, while the NPF only displayed significant ER $\alpha$  agonist activity ( $P < 0.05$ ). However, when conducting statistical analysis (unpaired t-test) to compare only the NPF to  $10^{-11}$  E $_2$  M, the NPF displayed significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) ER $\beta$  agonist activity via the post-optimised protocol.



**Figure 4.7: Promotor reporter studies investigating the effect of E<sub>2</sub>, SM6Met extract, NPF and F3 on ER $\alpha$  (A & C) and ER $\beta$  (B & D) transactivation via vit2.ERE.luc (A & B) and PS2.ERE.luc (C & D) in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with expression vectors pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , vit2.ERE.luc/PS2.ERE.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with increasing concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-11}$  –  $10^{-9}$  M) as agonist standards, SM6Met, NPF and F3 (9.8 $\mu$ g/ml), and ICI ( $10^{-10}$  M) as ER antagonist standard. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \* P < 0.05, \*\* P < 0.001, \*\*\* P < 0.0001, or compared to E<sub>2</sub>  $10^{-11}$  M (red bar) # P < 0.05, ## P < 0.001, ### P < 0.0001.

Antagonist mode was investigated in the presence of  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> with the induction of extract and fractions expressed relative to E<sub>2</sub>, which was set as 1. F3 displayed no antagonist activity but rather strong (P < 0.0001) ER $\beta$  agonist activity, at  $2.06 \pm 0.38$  fold induction (Figure 4.8 B), with the pre-optimised protocol, thus appearing to have an additive effect via the ER $\beta$  subtype. F3, however, did display significant (P < 0.001) levels of ER $\alpha$  antagonism with the pre-optimised protocol (Figure 4.8 A). This is in contrast to the results of Mortimer *et al.* [15], where no significant antagonism of F3 for either ER subtype was observed.

In the post-optimised protocol, F3 displayed no antagonistic activity for either ER subtype, in accordance with results from Mortimer *et al.* [15]. F3 did, however, display a significant

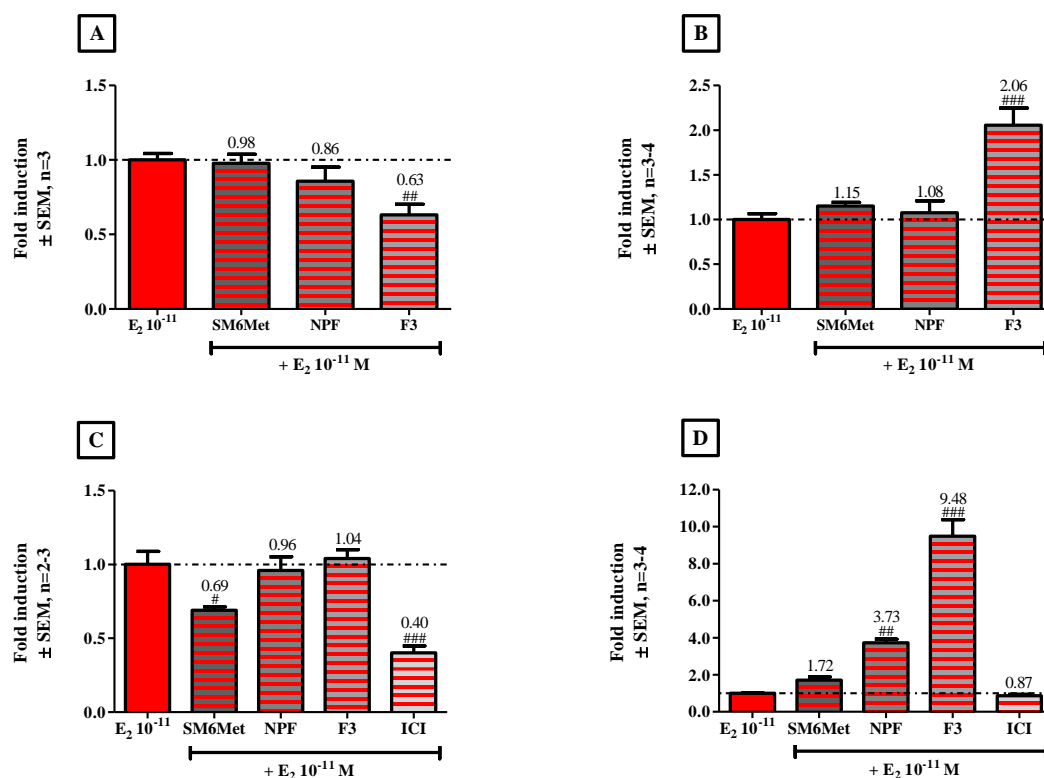


( $P < 0.0001$ ) 9.48-fold higher ER $\beta$  agonist activity (Figure 4.8 D) in the presence of E<sub>2</sub>, which further substantiates F3's strong additive ER $\beta$  agonist activity.

In the pre-optimised protocol, neither SM6Met nor the NPF displayed significant antagonist activity in the presence of  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> via either ER subtype, which contradicts the ER $\alpha$  antagonistic profile of SM6Met and NPF previously identified by Mortimer *et al* [15].

SM6Met did, however, present with significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) ER $\alpha$  antagonist activity (Figure 4.8 C) in the post-optimised protocol, which corroborates previous studies [15,20]. The increased  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> activity via ER $\alpha$  observed with the post-optimised protocol (Figure 4.7 C) could have resulted in the recovered ER $\alpha$  antagonist activity of SM6Met (Figure 4.8 C), which was not detected in the pre-optimised protocol (Figure 4.8 A). The increased sensitivity observed in the post-optimised protocol has, however, not resulted in the NPF displaying significant ER $\alpha$  antagonist activity.

To summarise the validation of the promoter reporter protocol, F3 demonstrated strong and significant ER $\beta$  agonist activity in both the pre- and post-optimised protocol. However, the post-optimised protocol with ERE.PS2.Luc is a more sensitive protocol with F3 displaying a 10-fold increase in ER $\beta$  agonist activity relative to  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> versus a 1.5-fold increase via ERE.Vit2.luc in the pre-optimised protocol. Therefore, for the current study, the post-optimised protocol would be ideal to investigate the interaction and possible synergism of the 7 major phenolic compounds identified in F3 in terms of ER $\beta$  activity [15].



**Figure 4.8: Promotor reporter studies investigating the effect of E<sub>2</sub>, SM6Met extract, NPF, F3 and fulvestrant (ICI) on ERα (A & C) and ERβ (B & D) transactivation via vit2.ERE.luc (A & B) and PS2.ERE.luc (C & D) in antagonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with expression vectors pSG5-hERα/pSG5-hERβ, vit2.ERE.luc/PS2.ERE.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup> M, as well as SM6Met, NP and F3 (9.8μg/ml), and ICI (10<sup>-10</sup> M) as ER antagonist standard, in the presence of E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup> M. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to E<sub>2</sub> 10<sup>-11</sup> M set to 1 (black dotted line), # P<0.05, ## P<0.001, ### P<0.0001.

### 4.3. Conclusion

As mentioned frequently throughout this chapter, a sensitive system is essential when testing drug interactions and possible synergism. This is especially important when testing phytocompounds since the interactions of the plant phenolic mixtures are complex and not fully understood. For example, it has been shown that compounds that do not display individual activity, could contribute to the bioavailability of active compounds within a mixture [7,34].

Therefore, in the current study, various factors were investigated (including cell types, ER subtypes and ERE promoter reporter constructs, and optimisation of experimental

procedures) in order to obtain an optimised protocol which is sensitive enough to detect small changes, produce accurate results and determine combinatory or possible synergistic effects.

From the optimisation of the experimental protocols (cell proliferation assay and promoter reporter assay), it is clear that the promoter reporter assay is a more sensitive experimental system to test phytochemical interactions, since the efficacies of E<sub>2</sub> via the promoter reporter assay (Figure 4.4) at  $77.36 \pm 3.37$  and  $6.22 \pm 0.14$  fold for ER $\beta$  and  $\alpha$ , respectively, were higher than that of the cell proliferation assay (Figure 4.2) at  $3.67 \pm 0.08$  fold.

The promoter reporter assay also produced results similar to previous work done on F3, the focus of the current study, with robust ER $\beta$  agonism (10-fold compared to  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>) and weak ER $\alpha$  agonism (0.6-fold compared to  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>). Furthermore, since F3 also displayed no antagonistic activity via either ER subtype using the post-optimised protocol as shown in Mortimer's study (Table 4.2), it was decided that further investigation would only be conducted in agonist mode.

In addition, the agonist and antagonist activity of SM6Met and the NPF in the post-optimised promoter reporter assay, were also compared to that of Mortimer *et al.* [15], (Table 4.2). SM6Met only displayed comparable results to that of Mortimer *et al.*, in antagonism mode via both ER subtypes, while the NPF results differed in all cases, except for ER $\beta$  antagonism. Furthermore, the antagonist results obtained for SM6Met and NPF via the MTT assay were also different from previous studies by Mortimer *et al.* [15], and Visser *et al.* [20]. These studies, however, used a higher concentration of E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-9}$  M) to investigate antagonism, whereas the current study used  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>, since this concentration of E<sub>2</sub> is situated on the inflection point line (Figure 4.2 B). It could be that  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub> did not display sufficiently strong agonist activity in order to detect the counter effects of the antagonist compounds. It could also be that degradation of phytoestrogens or important phenolic compounds in the

extract/fraction [35,36], some already identified [15,22,27], some yet to be discovered, could play a role. Combined these factors make it difficult to establish the possible causes of the change in SM6Met and the NPF's activity.

**Table 4.2: Summary of validation outcomes of promoter reporter and proliferation (MTT) assays using SM6Met, the NPF and F3 which either display significant agonist (Ag) or antagonist (Antag) activity.** Green represents results similar to whereas red represents results opposite to that of Mortimer *et al* [15].

		ER $\alpha$			ER $\beta$			MTT		
		Pre <sup>a</sup>	Post <sup>b</sup>	Mort <sup>c</sup>	Pre	Post	Mort	Pre <sup>d</sup>	Post <sup>e</sup>	Mort
Agonism	SM6Met	- <sup>f</sup>	-	Ag	-	-	Ag	Ag	Ag	-
	NPF	-	Ag	-	-	-	Ag	Ag	Ag	-
	F3	-	Ag	Ag	Ag	Ag	Ag	Ag	Ag	Ag
Antagonism	SM6Met	- <sup>g</sup>	Antag	Antag	-	-	-	-	-	Antag
	NPF	-	-	Antag	-	-	-	-	-	Antag
	F3	Antag	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

<sup>a</sup> summary from pre-optimised protocol (ERE.vit2.luc) – Figure 4.7 A & B, Figure 4.8 A & B

<sup>b</sup> summary from post-optimised protocol (ERE.PS2.luc) – Figure 4.7 A & B, Figure 4.8 A & B

<sup>c</sup> summary from Mortimer *et al.* [15]

<sup>d</sup> summary from pre-optimised protocol (MTT) – Figure 4.5 A & C

<sup>e</sup> summary from post-optimised protocol (MTT) – Figure 4.5 B & D

<sup>f</sup> no agonist activity

<sup>g</sup> no antagonist activity

In summary, it was decided that the cell proliferation assay would not be used for further investigations. The promoter reporter assay, on the other hand, provided a more sensitive system and F3 results comparable to that of previous studies, and will therefore be used to further investigate the interaction and possible synergistic activity of the phenolic compounds previously compounds identified in F3 [15].

## 4.4. References

1. Panay N, Rees M. Alternatives to hormone replacement therapy for management of menopause symptoms. *Curr Obstet Gynaecol*. 2005;15: 259–266.
2. Saldanha SN, Tollefsbol TO. The role of nutraceuticals in chemoprevention and chemotherapy and their clinical outcomes. *J Oncol*. 2012;2012: 192464.
3. Carter WH, Wampler GL, Stablein DM, Campbell ED. Drug activity and therapeutic synergism in cancer treatment. *Cancer Res*. 1982;42: 2963–71.
4. Bedell S, Nachtigall M, Naftolin F. The pros and cons of plant estrogens for menopause. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;139: 225–236.
5. Ziegler RG. Phytoestrogens and breast cancer. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2004;79: 183–184.
6. Adlercreutz H. Phyto-oestrogens and cancer. *Lancet Oncol*. 2002;3: 364–373.
7. Williamson EM. Synergy and other interactions in phytomedicines. *Phytomedicine*. 2001;8: 401–409.
8. Tallarida RJ. Drug Synergism : Its Detection and Applications. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2001;298: 865–872.
9. Tallarida RJ. Quantitative Methods for Assessing Drug Synergism. *Genes Cancer*. 2011;2: 1003–1008.
10. Tallarida RJ. An overview of drug combination analysis with isobolograms. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther*. 2006;319: 1–7.
11. Ramsey TL, Risinger KE, Jernigan SC, Mattingly K a, Klinge CM. Estrogen receptor beta isoforms exhibit differences in ligand-activated transcriptional activity in an estrogen response element sequence-dependent manner. *Endocrinology*. 2004;145: 149–160.
12. Lai CF, Flach KD, Alexi X, Fox SP, Ottaviani S, Thiruchelvam PTR, et al. Co-regulated gene expression by oestrogen receptor  $\alpha$  and liver receptor homolog-1 is a feature of the oestrogen response in breast cancer cells. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2013;41: 10228–10240.
13. Hall JM, McDonnell DP, Korach KS. Allosteric regulation of estrogen receptor structure, function, and coactivator recruitment by different estrogen response elements. *Mol Endocrinol*. 2002;16: 469–486.
14. Klinge CM. Estrogen receptor interaction with estrogen response elements. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2001;29: 2905–2919.

15. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia* nutraceutical extract, SM6Met. PLoS One. 2015;10: 1–22.
16. Mortimer MF. Isolation and identification of compounds conferring phytoestrogenic activity to *Cyclopia* extracts. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2014.
17. ATCC. 293 [hek-293] (atcc ® crl- 1573 <sup>TM</sup> ) [Internet]. pp. 1–3. Available: [http://www.lgcstandards-atcc.org/products/all/CRL-1573.aspx?geo\\_country=za](http://www.lgcstandards-atcc.org/products/all/CRL-1573.aspx?geo_country=za)
18. Nadal-Serrano M, Sastre-Serra J, Pons DG, Miro a M, Oliver J, Roca P. The ER $\alpha$ /ER $\beta$  ratio determines oxidative stress in breast cancer cell lines in response to 17 $\beta$ -estradiol. J Cell Biochem. 2012;113: 3178–3185.
19. Thomas P, Smart TG. HEK293 cell line: A vehicle for the expression of recombinant proteins. J Pharmacol Toxicol. 2005;51: 187–200.
20. Visser K, Mortimer M, Louw A. *Cyclopia* extracts act as ER $\alpha$  antagonists and ER $\beta$  agonists, *in vitro* and *in vivo*. PLoS One. 2013;8: 1–22.
21. Pan M-H, Chiou Y-S, Chen L-H, Ho C-T. Breast cancer chemoprevention by dietary natural phenolic compounds: specific epigenetic related molecular targets. Mol Nutr Food Res. 2015;59: 21–35.
22. Louw A, Joubert E, Visser K. Phytoestrogenic potential of *Cyclopia* extracts and polyphenols. Planta Med. 2013;79: 580–590.
23. Wilkinson AS, Taing M-W, Pierson JT, Lin C-N, Dietzgen RG, Shaw PN, et al. Estrogen modulation properties of mangiferin and quercetin and the mangiferin metabolite norathyriol. Food Funct. Royal Society of Chemistry; 2015;6: 1847–1854.
24. Dechering K, Boersma C, Mosselman S. Estrogen receptors  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ : Two receptors of a kind? Curr Med Chem. 2000;7: 561–576.
25. Katzenellenbogen BS, Kendra KL, Norman MJ, Katzenellenbogen BS, Rendra KL, Norman MJ, et al. Proliferation, hormonal responsiveness, and estrogen receptor content of MCF-7 human breast cancer grown in the short-term and long-term absence of estrogens. Cancer Res. 1987;47: 4355–4360.
26. Karmakar S, Jin Y, Nagaich AK. Interaction of glucocorticoid receptor (GR) with estrogen receptor (ER)  $\alpha$  and activator protein 1 (AP1) in dexamethasone-mediated interference of ER $\alpha$  activity. J Biol Chem. 2013;288: 24020–24034.
27. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Screening of four *Cyclopia* (honeybush) species for putative phyto-oestrogenic activity by oestrogen receptor binding assays. S Afr J Sci. 2007; 13–21.

28. Hammouche SB, Remana S, Exbrayat J-M. Immunolocalization of hepatic estrogen and progesterone receptors in the female lizard *Uromastix acanthinura*. *C R Biol. Academie des sciences*; 2012;335: 445–53.
29. Leños-Castañeda O, Van Der Kraak G. Functional characterization of estrogen receptor subtypes, ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , mediating vitellogenin production in the liver of rainbow trout. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*. 2007. pp. 116–125.
30. Kim J, Petz LN, Ziegler YS, Wood JR, Potthoff SJ, Nardulli AM. Regulation of the estrogen-responsive pS2 gene in MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2000;74: 157–168.
31. Lu D, Kiriya Y, Lee KY, Giguère V. Transcriptional regulation of the estrogen-inducible pS2 breast cancer marker gene by the ERR family of orphan nuclear receptors. *Cancer Res*. 2001;61: 6755–61.
32. Zheng J, Ramirez VD. Inhibition of mitochondrial proton F<sub>0</sub>F<sub>1</sub>-ATPase/ATP synthase by polyphenolic phytochemicals. *Br J Pharmacol*. 2000;130: 1115–1123.
33. Twentyman PR, Luscombe M. A study of some variables in a tetrazolium dye (MTT) based assay for cell growth and chemosensitivity. *Br J Cancer*. 1987;56: 279–285.
34. Manach C, Scalbert A, Morand C, Rémésy C, Jime L. Polyphenols: food sources and bioavailability 1,2. *Am Soc Clin Nutr*. 2004;79: 727–747.
35. Klimczak I, Malecka M, Szlachta M, Gliszczynska-Swiglo A. Effect of storage on the content of polyphenols, vitamin C and the antioxidant activity of orange juices. *J Food Compos Anal*. 2007;20: 313–322.
36. Ananingsih VK, Sharma A, Zhou W. Green tea catechins during food processing and storage: A review on stability and detection. *Food Res Int*. 2013;50: 469–479.

## **Chapter 5: Investigating the contribution of the major phenolic compounds identified in F3, to the robust ER $\beta$ activity of F3.**



## 5.1. Introduction

Plants form part of our daily diet, and with increased evidence linking plant based food to improved health, as well as disease prevention, plants are not only considered a source of macronutrients (proteins, carbohydrates and fats), but also micronutrients (vitamins, minerals, dietary fibre, antioxidants and polyphenols) that have potential anti-inflammatory, anti-diabetic and anti-carcinogenic properties [1–8].

For many years plants have played a role in the healing rituals of indigenous and traditional populations such as in India, China and Africa [9–13]. The main focus of traditional phytomedicine is on using combination therapy to treat a patient as a whole while combating disease on multiple levels, instead of using a single well characterised active compound that is target specific [12,14]. This holistic approach of traditional medicine has transformed modern drug development and changed the way therapies for complex diseases, such as cancer, is approached [9,15].

The higher effectiveness of plant extracts in comparison to single active plant derived compounds is thought to be due to the combinatorial and/or synergistic effects of the mixture of different active and supporting constituents [7,16–18]. The supporting constituents themselves could be pharmacologically inactive, but contribute to the stability, solubility and/or absorption rate of the active compounds [19]. The advantages of combinatorial or synergy approaches in cancer drug development are the possible multi-target effects that could result in the prevention of DNA damage, down regulation of oncogenes, up regulation of tumour-suppressor genes, and inhibition of pathways involved in the proliferation of defective cells [8,12,20–22].

One plant of particular interest for the current study regarding possible novel nutraceutical development, that contains high levels of phenolic compounds and has displayed

phytoestrogenic, anti-diabetic, anti-inflammatory and anti-mutagenic activity, is *Cyclopia*, which is more commonly known as Honeybush [6,23–28]. *Cyclopia* forms part of the indigenous South African fynbos and is commercially available as a herbal tea [29,30]. In studies conducted by Mfenyana *et al.* [31] and Visser *et al.* [32], the sequential methanol extract from *Cyclopia subternata* harvesting M6 (SM6Met) was shown to be an ER $\beta$  agonist, an ER $\alpha$  antagonist and an inhibitor of E<sub>2</sub>-induced breast cancer cell proliferation. The current study, as mentioned in previous Chapters, focuses on F3, one of the fractions isolated from SM6Met [33].

In Chapter 4, F3 was shown to display robust ER $\beta$  agonism, with a 10-fold increase in activity when compared to 10<sup>-11</sup> M E<sub>2</sub> (the physiological relevant concentrations of E<sub>2</sub> in healthy women) [34]. Additionally, F3 displayed 1.6-fold lower activity than 10<sup>-11</sup> M E<sub>2</sub> via ER $\alpha$ . This demonstrates that F3 exhibits ER subtype selective activity, and highlights its potential as a nutraceutical in the treatment of estrogen-related cancer, especially considering that ER $\beta$  has been shown to inhibit the proliferative effects of ER $\alpha$  [35–38].

The phytoestrogenic activity of some of the individual phenolic compounds in *Cyclopia*, and subsequently in F3, was previously established [23,30]. However, the behaviour of these compounds in combination is still unknown. Therefore, the current study focuses on combining the 7 individual major phenolic compounds, identified and quantified in F3 [33], in order to determine their combinatorial or possible synergistic contribution to the favourable estrogenic profile of this fraction. The activity of the individual phytoestrogenic compounds was also investigated, in an attempt to determine their contribution to the estrogenic profile of F3.

Following on from the optimisation and validation of estrogenic bioassays (Chapter 4), the promoter reporter assay was established as the more sensitive system to test phyto compound

interactions and possible synergism, and therefore, the optimised protocol, in agonist mode, was used to investigate the phytoestrogenic activity of the phenolic compounds in the current Chapter.

## 5.2. Results and discussion

### 5.2.1. Evaluation of the estrogenic activity of reconstituted F3 (F3R)

To evaluate and fully understand the nutraceutical potential of plant extracts, it is important to first understand the combinatorial role of all their components. This is, however, a difficult task when the activity and role of all the individual compounds are not yet known, as in the case of F3. Mortimer *et al.* [33], identified 15 phenolic compounds in F3 using LCMS-MS, and quantified 7 of these phenolic compounds using qHPLC. Mangiferin, isomangiferin, scolymsoside, *p*-coumaric acid and protochatechuic acid were identified as the major phenolic compounds present at the highest concentrations in F3. In his study, Mortimer also included two minor compounds in terms of mass, iriflophenone-3-*C*-glucoside and luteolin, since they were commercially available and could be detected in 9.8mg/ml\* of F3. These 7 phenolic compounds<sup>†</sup> were then classified by Mortimer as the major phenolic compounds in F3, an appellation we also use throughout the current study [33,39].

The ideal approach to understand how F3 mediates its favourable ER $\beta$  agonist effect, would be to investigate all the major and minor phenolic compounds previously identified in F3 [39]. However, as a starting point, only the 7 major phenolic compounds identified and quantified by Mortimer were used to reconstitute F3 (F3R), and to investigate their contribution to the robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity of F3, as demonstrated in Chapter 4.

---

\* 9.8mg/ml is a concentration used throughout our research group based on a study by Verhoog *et al.* [23][127].

<sup>†</sup> The 7 phenolic compounds were purchased from different suppliers (see section 3.2.1).

F3's activity was validated prior to reconstituting the fraction. F3 displayed significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) ER $\beta$  agonist activity at  $28.00 \pm 2.78$  fold induction (Figure 5.1 B) and no significant ER $\alpha$  activity at  $1.23 \pm 0.07$  fold induction (Figure 5.1 A). Furthermore, when comparing F3 to the E<sub>2</sub> standards ( $10^{-11}$ ,  $10^{-10}$  &  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub>), it displayed a significant 8.8-fold increase in activity via ER $\beta$  compared to  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>, and no significant difference when compared to  $10^{-10}$  M E<sub>2</sub>, whereas via ER $\alpha$ , F3 displayed a 1.12-fold decrease in activity compared  $10^{-11}$  M E<sub>2</sub>. This is consistent with the findings from Chapter 4 and Mortimer *et al.*, [33].

The reconstituted F3 (F3R) was assembled according to the concentrations in Table 5.1, and the phytoestrogenic activity compared to the original F3, to determine if the major phenolic compounds are responsible for F3's robust ER $\beta$  mediated activity. F3R (1x), showed no estrogenic activity via ER $\beta$  compared to solvent and was a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 28-fold lower than F3 (Figure 5.1 B). F3R (1x) also showed no significant ER $\alpha$  activity, as expected, since F3 also showed little ER $\alpha$  activity ( $1.23 \pm 0.07$  fold induction).

**Table 5.1: Phenolic content in F3 as identified in Mortimer *et al.* [33], which was used in reconstitution studies.**

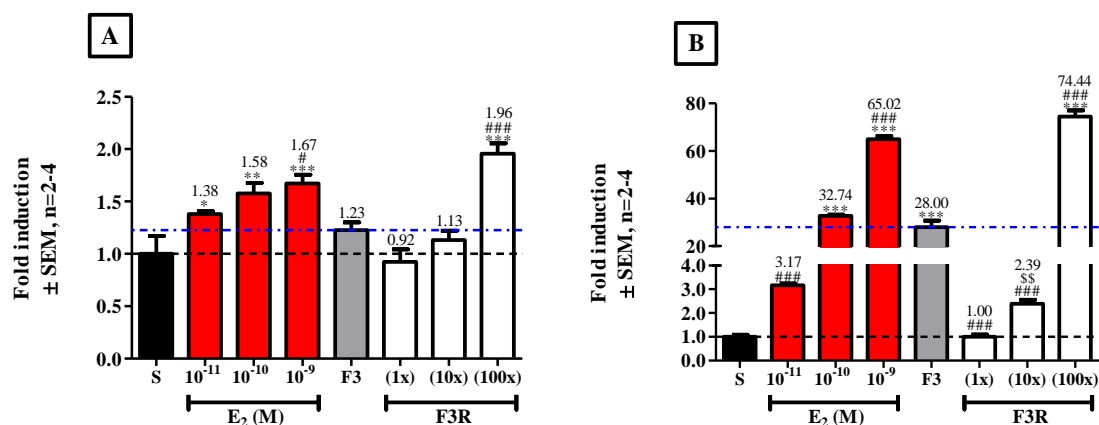
Concentrations	Mangiferin	Isomangiferin	<i>p</i> -Coumaric acid	Scolymoside	Luteolin	Protocatechuic acid	Iriflophenone-3-C-glc
$\mu\text{g}/9.8\mu\text{g}^{\text{a}}$	1.133	0.394	0.056	0.752	0.020	0.063	0.009
<b>1x F3R (M<sup>b</sup>)</b>	$2.684 \times 10^{-6}$	$0.932 \times 10^{-6}$	$3.404 \times 10^{-7}$	$1.264 \times 10^{-6}$	$4.735 \times 10^{-8}$	$4.111 \times 10^{-7}$	$2.204 \times 10^{-8}$
<b>10x F3R (M)</b>	$2.684 \times 10^{-5}$	$0.932 \times 10^{-5}$	$3.404 \times 10^{-6}$	$1.264 \times 10^{-5}$	$4.735 \times 10^{-7}$	$4.111 \times 10^{-6}$	$2.204 \times 10^{-7}$
<b>100x F3R (M)</b>	$2.684 \times 10^{-4}$	$0.932 \times 10^{-4}$	$3.404 \times 10^{-5}$	$1.264 \times 10^{-4}$	$4.735 \times 10^{-6}$	$4.111 \times 10^{-5}$	$2.204 \times 10^{-6}$

<sup>a</sup>  $\mu\text{g}$  polyphenol in  $9.8\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  F3

<sup>b</sup> molar concentration of polyphenols corresponding to  $\mu\text{g}$  in  $9.8\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  F3, as used in cell culture experiments

To ensure that the lack of phytoestrogenic activity observed with F3R (1x) was not due to inaccurate sample preparation, LC-MS was performed and the phenolic content of F3R was compared to that in F3 (Figure S.1 & S.2). Data was processed using MassLynx V4.1

software (Waters, USA) and the major phenolic compounds in F3R displayed similar peak areas and retention times to the compounds in F3, indicating that F3R was made up correctly and that the lack of phytoestrogenic activity was not due to sample preparation errors.



**Figure 5.1: Promotor reporter studies investigating the effect of E $_2$ , F3 and F3R on ER $\alpha$  (A) and ER $\beta$  (B) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with E $_2$  (10 $^{-11}$  – 10 $^{-9}$  M), F3 (9.8 $\mu$ g/ml) and F3R reconstituted at 1x, 10x and 100x the concentrations of major phenolic compounds as identified in F3 (9.8 $\mu$ g/ml). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001, and to F3 (grey bar) #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001. Unpaired t-test, solvent vs F3R (10x): \$P<0.05, \$\$P<0.01, \$\$\$P<0.001.

In addition, F3R was reconstituted at higher concentrations, as some of the phenolic compounds, like luteolin, have previously been shown to display phytoestrogenic activity [23,30,32,40,41]. F3R reconstituted at 10-fold (10x) its concentration in F3, F3R (10x), showed no significant activity via ER $\alpha$  and a 2.39-fold increase in activity via ER $\beta$ , although still not significant when compared to solvent. Conducting an unpaired t-test analysis, comparing only solvent to F3R (10x), a significant (P<0.01) induction was observed via ER $\beta$ , but not via ER $\alpha$ . The ER $\beta$  activity was, however, still a significant 11.72-fold lower than F3.

Only at 100-fold (100x) the original concentration in F3 did F3R display significantly higher (P<0.001) fold induction via both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , at 1.96  $\pm$  0.09 and 74.44  $\pm$  2.65 fold induction, respectively. A significant (P<0.001) 1.59-fold increase in activity was observed via ER $\alpha$  when compared to F3, and no significant difference when compared to 10 $^{-9}$  M E $_2$ .

With ER $\beta$ , F3R (100x) displayed a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 2.66-fold increase in activity compared to F3, and a significant ( $P < 0.01$ ) 1.15-fold increase compared to  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub>.

From these results, we can conclude that the 7 major phenolic compounds reconstituted at their original concentration as quantified in F3, do not recapitulate the activity of F3. This further accentuates the importance of the fraction as a whole and of including minor phenolic compounds. Only at 100x the concentration did F3R display significantly higher ( $P < 0.001$ ) agonist activity than F3 via both ER subtypes. It could be that the minor phenolic compounds not included in F3R play a supporting role (e.g. by influencing absorption, stability or export) in the phytoestrogenic activity of the major phenolic compounds in F3, and that without these minor compounds the major compounds in F3R are not present in the cells at a sufficient concentration to induce an estrogenic response. However, at higher concentrations, varying between  $10^{-6}$  M and  $10^{-4}$  M (Table 5.1), the major phenolic compounds are able to elicit an estrogenic response as seen with F3R (100x). These higher concentrations (Table 5.1) also corresponded to the concentration ( $10^{-5}$  M) of individual phenolic compounds, such as luteolin, previously shown to display phytoestrogenic activity within our research group [42].

To determine which of the 7 major phenolic compounds in F3R contribute to the activity observed at higher concentrations (10x F3R and 100x F3R), a further investigation was conducted regarding the individual activity of these compounds.

## **5.2.2. Estrogenic activity of the phenolic compounds in F3R**

### **5.2.2.1. Estrogenic activity of the individual phenolic compounds in F3R**

Various societies globally are dependent on traditional medicinal plant sources for disease treatment due to poverty, lack of pharmaceutical manufacturing capacity or limited access to modern medicine [13,43]. Plant extracts consist of a variety of compounds that display

complex interactions, and the adverse effects of traditional phytomedicine are not as well studied as that of synthetic drugs [9,19,44–47]. Therefore, to understand how plant extracts exert their effects as a whole, it is not only important to investigate the combinatorial effect of the constituent parts, but also the individual activity of all the compounds in order to establish safety and efficacy [19,44].

F3R did not display any phytoestrogenic activity when reconstituted at the same concentrations of major phenolic compounds as quantified in F3 (Table 5.1). At higher concentrations, however, a significant increase in agonist activity was observed with F3R. As mentioned before, luteolin has previously been shown to have phytoestrogenic activity, but at concentrations higher than that of luteolin in F3 ( $1 \times 10^{-5}$  M vs  $4.7 \times 10^{-8}$  M, respectively) [23,42,48]. Therefore, to determine the individual activity profile and to discover which of the phenolic compounds could possibly contribute to F3R's estrogenic activity at higher concentrations, the individual compounds were also investigated at increasing concentrations (1x, 10x, 100x).

A decrease in sensitivity of the test system (especially via ER $\beta$ ) was observed at this stage of the study, and various aspects were investigated including cell passage number, growth medium, DNA plasmid quality, as well as incubator functionality, but no deviations or decrease in quality was noticed. Despite the decrease in sensitivity and ongoing search for the possible cause, the rank order of F3 activity compared to the E<sub>2</sub> controls remained similar. Specifically as seen in Figure 5.2, F3 elicited a response that was not significantly different than  $10^{-11}$  M via ER $\alpha$  (as also seen in Figure 5.1 A), and retained its position between  $10^{-10}$  M and  $10^{-9}$  M E<sub>2</sub> via ER $\beta$ .

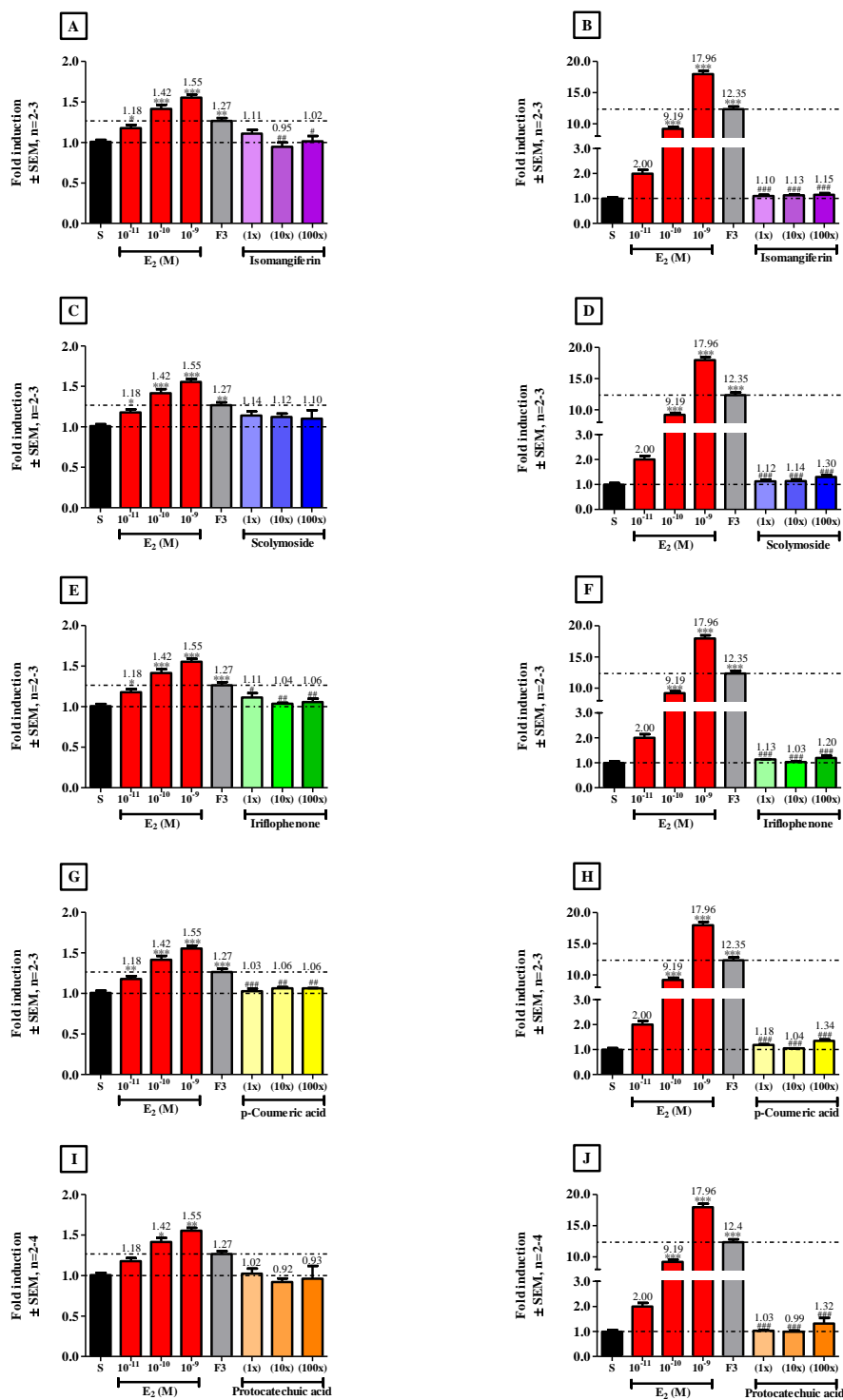
None of the 7 phenolic compounds displayed significant estrogenic activity at 1x their concentration in F3 (Figure 5.2 A – J & Figure 5.3 A – D). This concurs with findings from

Mortimer's study [33] and was expected since F3R (1x) displaced no activity (Figure 5.1). In addition, isomangiferin, scolymoside, iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside, *p*-coumaric acid and protocatechuic acid also did not display any significant phytoestrogenic activity at increased (10x and 100x) concentrations (Figure 5.2 A – J). Although these phenolic compounds did not display phytoestrogenic activity in our system, some of them (protocatechuic acid and *p*-coumaric acid) have been shown to possess anti-carcinogenic and chemo-preventative properties in breast cancer cell lines [49–52].

Mangiferin and luteolin were the only two phenolic compounds that demonstrated phytoestrogenic activity in our test system at increased concentrations (Figure 5.3 A – D). At the time, mangiferin's phytoestrogenic activity was a novel finding [30,33,42].

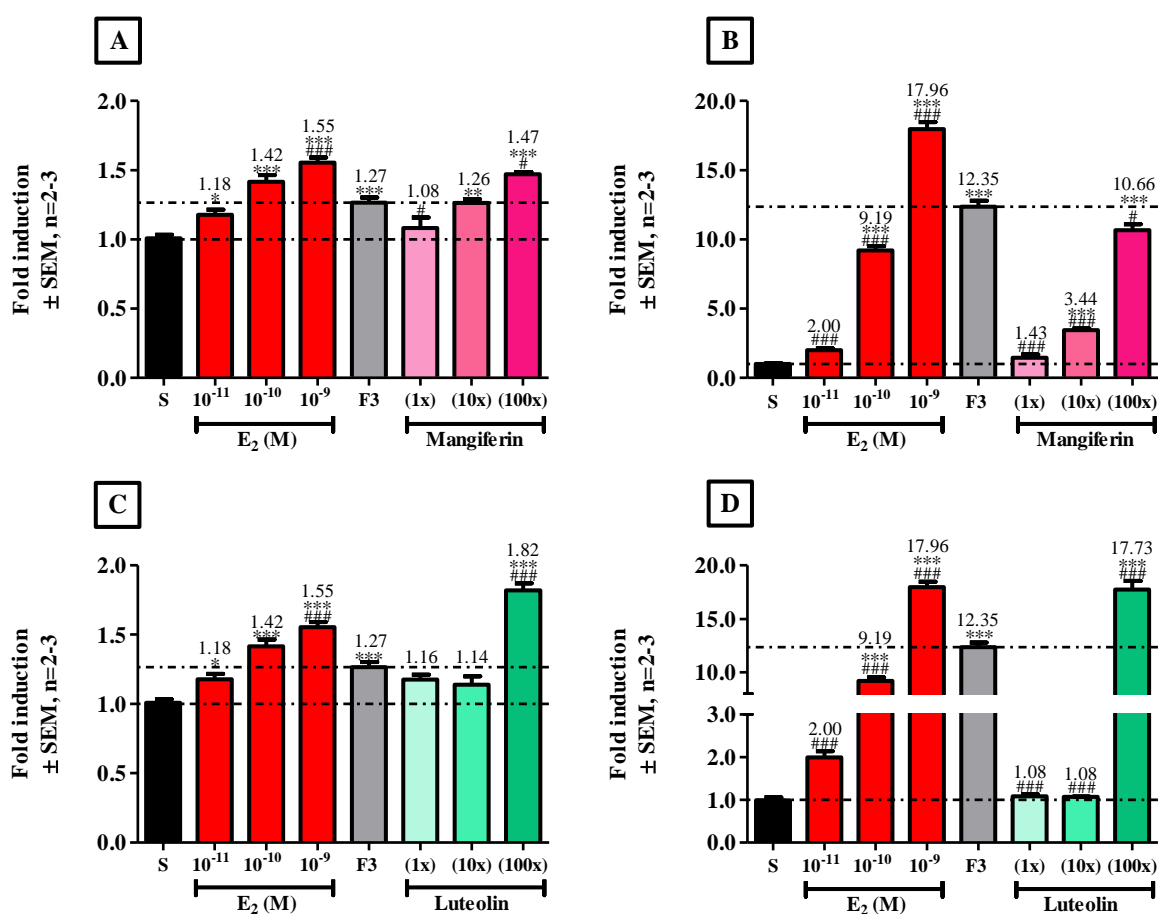
Mangiferin (10x) displayed a significant ( $P < 0.01$ ) increase in activity via both ER $\alpha$  (Figure 5.3 A) and ER $\beta$  (Figure 5.3B), at  $1.26 \pm 0.03$  and  $3.44 \pm 0.11$  fold induction, respectively. Even so, mangiferin (10x) still displayed a significantly ( $P < 0.001$ ) lower activity when compared to that of F3 via ER $\beta$  (Figure 5.3 B), but no significant difference via ER $\alpha$  (Figure 5.3 A). Luteolin, on the other hand, displayed no significant estrogenic activity at 10x its concentration in F3 via either ER subtype (Figure 5.3 C & D).





**Figure 5.2: Promotor reporter studies investigating the effect of E<sub>2</sub>, F3 and the individual major phenolic compounds identified in F3 via ER $\alpha$  (A, C, E, G & I) and ER $\beta$  (B, D, F, H & J) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with E<sub>2</sub> (10<sup>-11</sup> – 10<sup>-9</sup> M), F3 (9.8 μg/ml) and individual phenolic compounds at 1x, 10x and 100x their concentrations as identified in 9.8 μg/ml F3 (Table 5.1): isomangiferin (A & B), scolymoside (C & D), iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside (E & F), *p*-coumaric acid (G & H) & protocatechuic acid (I & J). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001, and individual phenolic compounds compared to F3 (Grey bar), #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001.

Mangiferin and luteolin, at 100x their concentration in F3, however, both presented a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) increase in activity via both the ER subtypes. Compared to F3, mangiferin displayed a small, yet significant ( $P < 0.05$ ), 1.16-fold increase in activity via  $ER\alpha$ , and a significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) 1.16-fold lower activity via  $ER\beta$ . Luteolin (100x) demonstrated robust ER agonist activity with a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 1.43- and 1.44-fold increase in activity when compared to F3, via  $ER\alpha$  and  $ER\beta$ , respectively.



**Figure 5.3: Promotor reporter studies investigating the effect of  $E_2$ , F3 and the individual phenolic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, identified in F3 via  $ER\alpha$  (A & C) and  $ER\beta$  (B & D) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-h $ER\alpha$ /pSG5-h $ER\beta$ ), ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with  $E_2$  ( $10^{-11}$  –  $10^{-9}$ M), F3 (9.8 $\mu$ g/ml) and individual phenolic compounds at 1x, 10x and 100x their concentrations as identified in 9.8 $\mu$ g/ml F3 (Table 5.1): mangiferin (A & B) and luteolin (C & D). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \* $P < 0.05$ , \*\* $P < 0.01$ , \*\*\* $P < 0.001$ , and individual phenolic compounds compared to F3 (grey bar) # $P < 0.05$ , ## $P < 0.01$ , ### $P < 0.001$ .

To conclude, none of the 7 individual major phenolic compounds displayed significant estrogenic activity at their concentration in 9.8µg/ml F3R. These results correlates with the findings of Mortimer *et al.* [33]. In addition, mangiferin and luteolin were the only two phenolic compounds that displayed phytoestrogenic activity at higher concentrations. The estrogenic activity of mangiferin was a novel discovery at this stage of the current study, as no articles or papers, to our knowledge then, had been published regarding mangiferin's estrogenicity, in contrast to luteolin, which had shown estrogenic activity via both ER subtypes in various experimental systems [23,30,42,53–55].

#### **5.2.2.2. Detailed investigation of estrogenic activity of the estrogenic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin**

In the literature, mangiferin and luteolin display a variety of health benefits including decreasing the prevalence of metabolic disorders, cardiovascular protective properties, and combating various cancers on multiple levels [56–62]. In breast cancer studies, luteolin has been shown to act like an aromatase inhibitor, by down regulating aromatase transcription and enzyme activity, to suppress ER $\alpha$  expression, and to inhibit MCF-7 breast cancer cell growth [40,55,57,62]. Mangiferin has been shown to decrease cell proliferation and increase apoptosis, which consequently resulted in the decrease in cell viability of ER-positive and ER-negative breast cancer cell lines [63–65].

ER signalling may be either ligand-dependent or ligand-independent, and estrogenic compounds may mediate their effect directly through the ER, or by binding to other receptors and influencing other signalling pathways [47,55,66,67]. Therefore, to determine mangiferin and luteolin's receptor-mediated mode of action, an ER binding assay was performed to establish whether these phenolic compounds would compete with radio-labelled 17 $\beta$ -estradiol ( $^3\text{H-E}_2$ ) for binding to the ER subtypes.

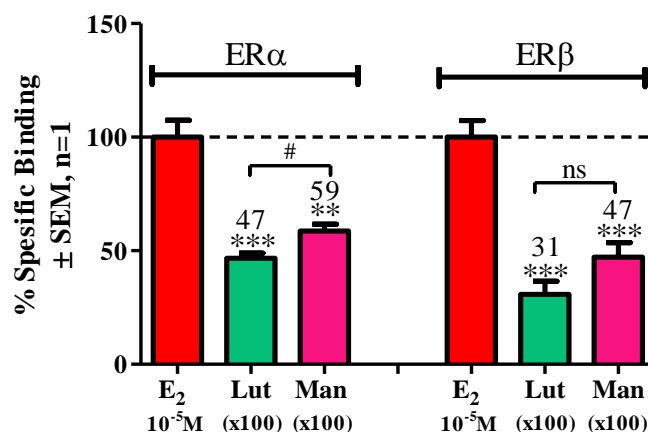
The specific binding<sup>‡</sup> of unlabelled  $10^{-5}$  M  $E_2$ , mangiferin (100x) and luteolin (100x) were determined, and the specific binding of the phenolic compounds were expressed relative to  $E_2$ , set to 100% (Figure 5.4). Mangiferin and luteolin were able to displace 20 nM  $^3\text{H-E}_2$  from both ER subtypes, however, not to the same extent as  $10^{-5}$  M  $E_2$ .

Luteolin's displacing of  $^3\text{H-E}_2$ , compared to  $E_2$ , was significantly ( $P < 0.001$ ) lower for both  $\text{ER}\alpha$  and  $\text{ER}\beta$ , at 47% and 31%, respectively. In a study conducted by Verhoog *et al.* [42], luteolin displaced more than 50% of  $^3\text{H-E}_2$  from both ER subtypes with a higher displacement percentage for  $\text{ER}\beta$ . The concentration of luteolin in Verhoog's study was, however, double the concentration used in the current study. The concentration difference could therefore be the cause of luteolin's lower binding capacity observed with  $\text{ER}\beta$  in the current study [42].

Mangiferin's ability to displace  $^3\text{H-E}_2$  from  $\text{ER}\alpha$  and  $\text{ER}\beta$  was also significantly ( $P < 0.01$ ) lower than  $E_2$ , yet, significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) higher than luteolin via  $\text{ER}\alpha$ . The only previous indication of mangiferin's ability to bind to the ER, is in a study by Kitalong *et al.* [68], where  $10^{-3}$  M mangiferin (a concentration approximately 4-fold higher than used in the current study) exhibited 50% displacement of fluorescence-labelled  $E_2$  from  $\text{ER}\alpha$ . Although the experimental system is different in the current study, mangiferin has, to our knowledge, never before been shown to display binding activity via  $\text{ER}\beta$  [30,42], and is therefore this is a novel finding.

---

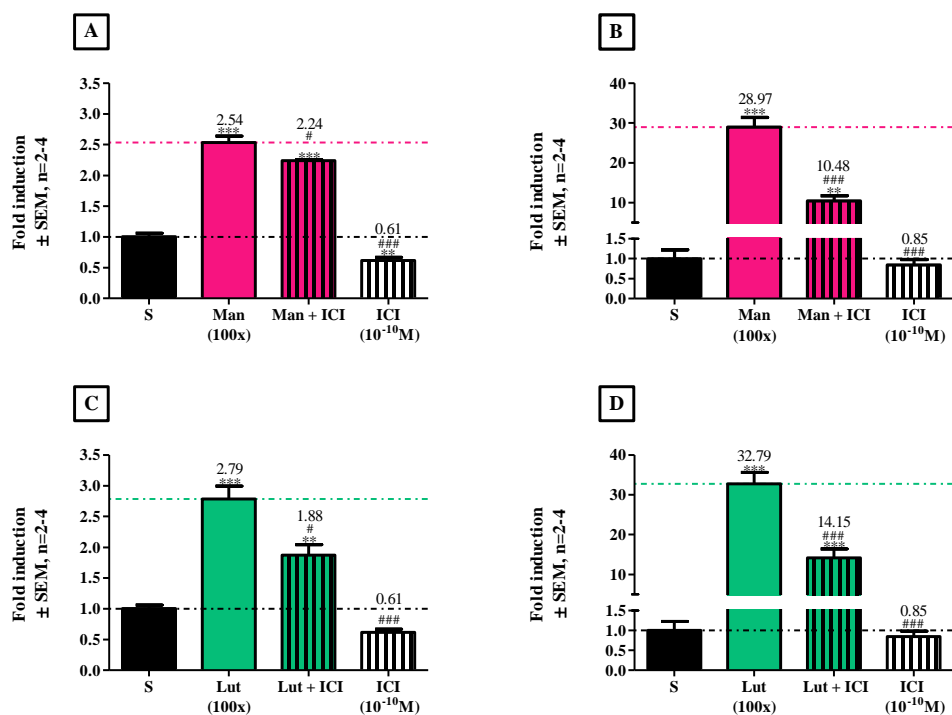
<sup>‡</sup> Specific binding = total binding – non-specific binding [128]



**Figure 5.4: Whole cell binding studies investigating the specific binding activity of E<sub>2</sub>, luteolin and mangiferin.** COS-1 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$  or pSG5-hER $\beta$ , and incubated with unlabelled E<sub>2</sub> (10<sup>-5</sup> M), 2.68 x 10<sup>-4</sup> M mangiferin (100x) or 4.74 x 10<sup>-6</sup> M luteolin (100x), in the presence of tritiated E<sub>2</sub> (20 nM). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, phenolic compounds compared to E<sub>2</sub> control set to 100% (red bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001, and individual phenolic compounds compared to each other, #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001.

The ability of a ligand to bind to the ER is not necessarily related to that ligand's ability to mediate an estrogenic response [30,55]. From the previous result, it is clear that both mangiferin and luteolin bind to the ERs, however, to determine if these phytoestrogenic compounds mediated their transcriptional effect through the ER subtypes, fulvestrant (a full ER antagonist also known as ICI 182,780 [69,70]) was added in combination with mangiferin (100x) or luteolin (100x).

A small, yet significant (P<0.05), decrease in activity was observed for both mangiferin (Figure 5.5 A) and luteolin (Figure 5.5 C) via ER $\alpha$  when fulvestrant (ICI) was added. With ER $\beta$ , on the other hand, addition of fulvestrant resulted in a significant (P<0.001) 2.76- and 2.32-fold decrease in mangiferin and luteolin's activity, respectively (Figure 5.5 B & D). Even though the concentration of ICI (10<sup>-10</sup> M) was relatively low compared to the concentrations of mangiferin (2.68 x 10<sup>-4</sup> M) and luteolin (4.74 x 10<sup>-6</sup> M), ICI was still able to decrease the estrogenic activity of these two phenolic compounds (by downregulating the ERs [70]), indicating that mangiferin and luteolin mediate their estrogenic effect by binding to the ERs.

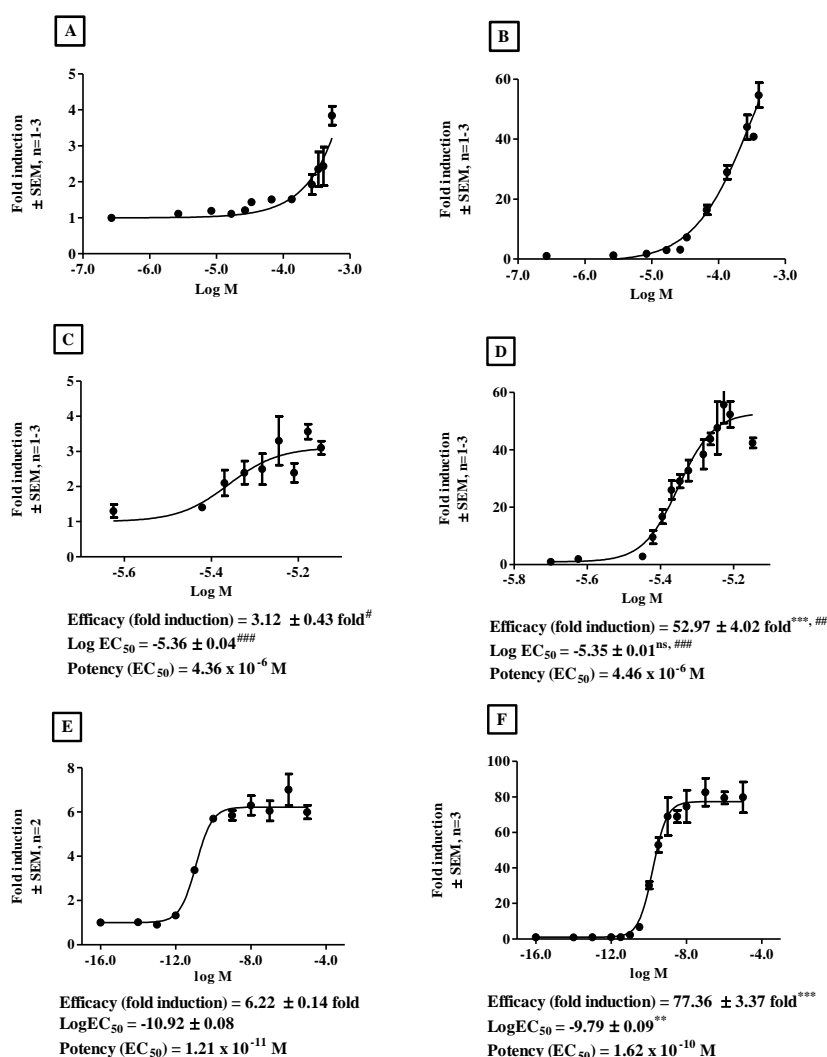


**Figure 5.5: Promoter reporter studies investigating the effect of the estrogenic phenolic compounds (mangiferin and luteolin) via ER $\alpha$  (A & C) and ER $\beta$  (B & D) transactivation in the absence and presence of an ER antagonist.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with  $2.68 \times 10^{-4}$  M mangiferin (100x) (A & B), and  $4.74 \times 10^{-6}$  M luteolin (100x) (C & D), in the absence and presence of  $10^{-10}$  M fulvestrant (ICI 182,780). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \* $P < 0.05$ , \*\* $P < 0.01$ , \*\*\* $P < 0.001$ , and individual phenolic compounds (Man/Lut) compared to Lut/Man + ICI and ICI, # $P < 0.05$ , ## $P < 0.01$ , ### $P < 0.001$ .

In addition, the efficacy and potency of mangiferin and luteolin were also investigated as a prelude to determining the potential combinatorial or synergistic activity of these estrogenic phenolic compounds. Unfortunately, the potency and efficacy of mangiferin could not be obtained (Figure 5.6 A & B), since the compound did not attain maximal response at the concentrations used, and even though higher concentrations were investigated, the solubility of mangiferin reached saturation in the medium.

Luteolin, on the other hand, displayed a biphasic response (a phenomenon also observed with estrogen [71]) with a dose dependent increase in activity up till 140x its concentration in F3R ( $6.63 \times 10^{-6}$  M), after which a decrease in activity was observed (Figure 5.6 C & D). Although there is a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 17-fold difference in efficacy between ER $\alpha$  and

ER $\beta$ , no significant difference was observed between their potencies at  $4.36 \times 10^{-6}$  M and  $4.46 \times 10^{-6}$  M, respectively (Figure 5.6 C & D). Similar results were obtained from another study by Verhoog *et al.* [23], which established a potency of  $6.78 \times 10^{-6}$  M via ER $\alpha$  and  $1.23 \times 10^{-5}$  M via ER $\beta$  for luteolin, within their experimental model. Relative to E $_2$ , luteolin acts as a partial ER agonist with reduced potency, since luteolin displayed significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) lower efficacy and potency than E $_2$  (Figure 5.6 E & F) via both ERs.



**Figure 5.6: Promoter reporter studies investigating the efficacy (maximal fold induction) and potency (EC $_{50}$ ) of mangiferin, luteolin and E $_2$  via ER $\alpha$  (A, C & E) and ER $\beta$  (B, D & F).** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$  or pSG5-hER $\beta$ , and PS2.ERE.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with increasing concentrations of mangiferin:  $2.68 \times 10^{-6}$  –  $5.36 \times 10^{-4}$  M (A & B), luteolin:  $2.37 \times 10^{-6}$  –  $7.10 \times 10^{-6}$  M (C & D) and E $_2$ :  $10^{-14}$  –  $10^{-5}$  M (E & F). Curve fitting: nonlinear regression with log (agonist) vs. response (three parameters). Statistical analysis of efficacy and potency: unpaired t-test, ER $\alpha$  vs ER $\beta$ , \* $P < 0.05$ , \*\* $P < 0.01$ , \*\*\* $P < 0.001$  and <sup>ns</sup>no significant difference, and E $_2$  vs lut, # $P < 0.05$ , ## $P < 0.01$ , ### $P < 0.001$ .

Luteolin has been shown to display estrogenic and anti-estrogenic activity in different experimental systems including luciferase based ERE-containing promoter reporter assays, ER binding assays and cell proliferation assays [23,30,42,57]. Luteolin has also been shown to inhibit other receptors including epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor (IGF-1R) and related signalling pathways, which indirectly affects ER $\alpha$  mediated activity [54,62,66,72]. The current study only investigated luteolin's ability to bind to the ER's and to mediate an estrogenic response via the promoter reporter assay. To fully understand luteolin's potential and contribution to the estrogenic profile of F3, more research is needed.

In contrast, little is known about mangiferin's estrogenic mode of action and many studies have claimed that mangiferin demonstrates no estrogenic activity in their experimental systems [23,30,32,42,68]. However, in a recent study by Wilkinson *et al.* [73], mangiferin (at  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M, a concentration similar to mangiferin (100x) in the current study) displayed ER $\alpha$  mediated estrogenic activity but no ER $\beta$  activity in COS-1 cells transfected with either pRST7-ER $\alpha$  or pRST7-ER $\beta$ , and a pGL2-TATA-Inr-Luc-3XERETATALuc reporter construct. These findings contradict the strong ER $\beta$  mediated estrogenic activity of mangiferin ( $2.68 \times 10^{-4}$  M) observed in the current study.

### **5.2.2.3. Identifying the phenolic compounds contributing to the activity of 100x F3R**

Investigation of the individual phytoestrogenic activity of the 7 major phenolic compounds confirmed that mangiferin and luteolin were the only two phenolic compounds in F3R that displayed individual estrogenicity at higher concentrations. Thus, to determine mangiferin and luteolin's contribution to the robust ER $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  agonist activity of F3R (100x), F3R was reconstituted with these estrogenic phenolic compounds at 100x their concentration, respectively, while the remaining phenolic compounds were maintained at 1x their



concentration in F3. Thus, when mangiferin was added at 100x, luteolin would only be added at 1x its concentration together with the other phenolic compounds, and vice versa. The activity of the newly constructed fractions, F3R Man 100x (Figure 5.7 A & C) and F3R Lut 100x (Figure 5.7 B & D), were subsequently compared to F3R as well as to their respective phenolic compounds at increasing concentrations.

Prior to comparing the newly reconstituted fractions, F3R was initially compared to the respective phenolic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, alone at increasing concentrations. F3R (1x), mangiferin (1x) (Figure 5.7 A & B) and luteolin (1x) (Figure 5.7 C & D) displayed no significant agonist activity via either ER subtype. Although, F3R (10x), mangiferin (10x) and luteolin (10x) also did not display significant activity via either ER subtype, via ER $\beta$ , both F3R (10x) and mangiferin (10x) presented with a circa 2-fold increase in activity (Figure 5.7 B). Statistical analysis (not shown) in the absence of F3R (100x), F3R Man (100x) and mangiferin (100x), showed a significant difference ( $P < 0.001$ ) between 1x and 10x F3R. Furthermore, a significant difference ( $P < 0.01$ ) was then also observed between 1x and 10x mangiferin, with no significant difference between F3R (10x) and mangiferin (10x), indicating that mangiferin (10x) was potentially responsible for the  $2.39 \pm 0.16$  fold induction observed with F3R (10x) via ER $\beta$ .

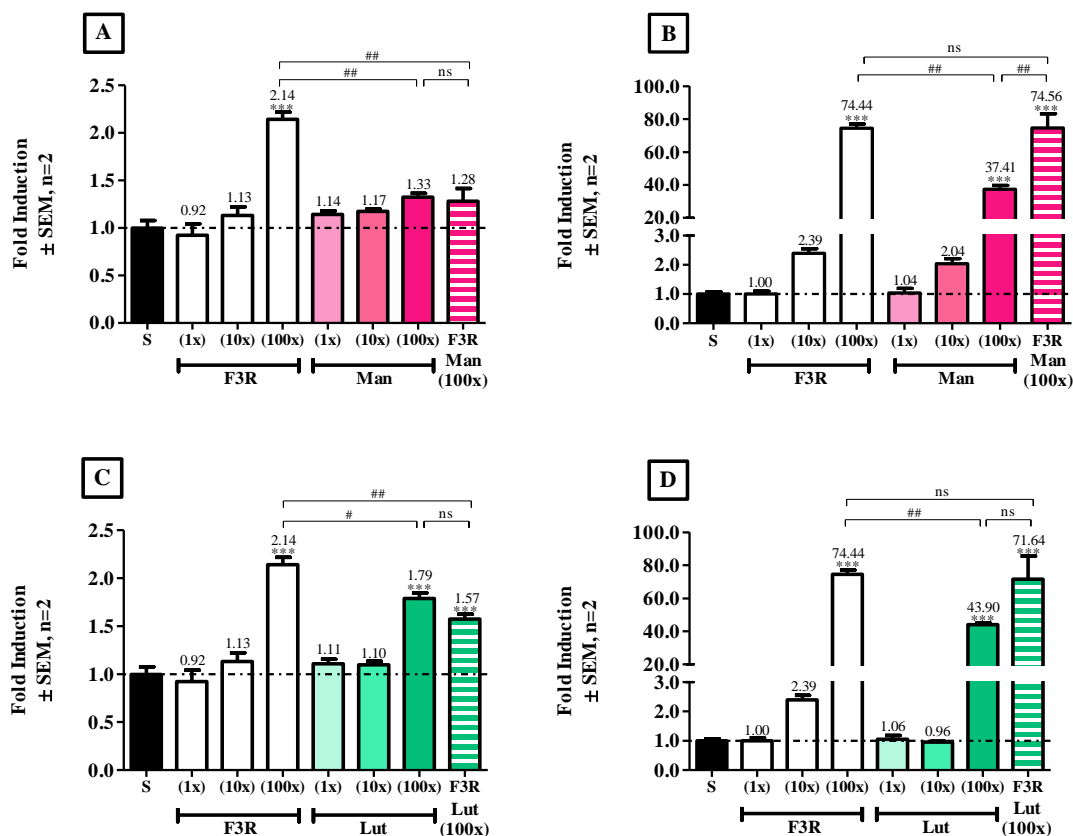
In addition, in a separate experiment, F3R was also reconstituted with each of the 7 major phenolic compounds at 10x their concentration, respectively, while the remaining phenolic compounds were maintained at 1x their concentration in F3 (Table 5.1 & Figure S.3). Only F3R Man (10x) displayed comparable results to F3R (10x) via ER $\beta$  at  $3.80 \pm 0.12$  and  $3.96 \pm 0.17$  fold induction, respectively, confirming mangiferin's (10x) role in F3R (10x) induction via ER $\beta$ . Via ER $\alpha$ , F3R (10x) and F3R Man (10x) were also the only two reconstituted mixtures that displayed significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) estrogenic activity, however, the overall fold induction for ER $\alpha$  was very low and there was no significant difference between any of the 7

newly reconstructed F3Rs (10x) and F3R (10x). Since the phenolic compounds are very expensive, it was decided at this point in the study to only focus on the phenolic compounds that contributed to the estrogenic activity observed with F3R (100x).

Comparing mangiferin (100x) with F3R (100x), a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 1.61- and 1.99-fold decrease in activity was observed via  $ER\alpha$  ( $2.14 \pm 0.08$  vs  $1.33 \pm 0.04$  fold induction) and  $ER\beta$  ( $74.44 \pm 2.65$  vs  $37.47 \pm 2.20$  fold induction) (Figure 5.7 A & B), respectively. Luteolin (100x) also displayed lower activity than F3R (100x), with a significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) 1.20- and 1.70-fold difference via  $ER\alpha$  and  $ER\beta$ , respectively (Figure 5.7 C & D). Suggesting that neither mangiferin (100x) nor luteolin (100x) alone could recapitulate the activity of F3R (100x).

Subsequently, the activity of the newly reconstituted fraction, F3R Man (100x), was compared to F3R (100x) and mangiferin (100x). Via  $ER\alpha$ , F3R Man (100x), like Man (x100), displayed no significant phytoestrogenic activity, which was significantly ( $P < 0.01$ ) lower than that of F3R (100x). However, in contrast, via  $ER\beta$  there was no significant difference observed between F3R Man (100x) and F3R (100x). Mangiferin (100x) on its own, on the other hand, displayed significantly ( $P < 0.01$ ) lower  $ER\beta$  activity compared to F3R Man (100x).

Comparing the response of the other newly reconstituted fraction (F3R Lut (100x)) to that of F3R (100x), a significant ( $P < 0.01$ ) difference was observed via  $ER\alpha$  and no significant difference via  $ER\beta$ . There was also no significant difference observed between luteolin (100x) and F3R Lut (100x) via either ER subtype, although Lut (100x) was significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) lower than F3R (100x) via both  $ER\beta$  and  $ER\alpha$ .



**Figure 5.7: Promotor reporter studies comparing the activity of F3R, the newly reconstructed fractions, F3R Lut 100x and F3R Man 100x, and the estrogenic phenolic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, via ER $\alpha$  (A & C) and ER $\beta$  (B & D) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ ), ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with F3R (1x, 10x and 100x), mangiferin (1x, 10x & 100x) and F3R Man 100x (A & B), as well as luteolin (1x, 10x & 100x) and F3R Lut 100x (C & D). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001, or the activity of F3R (100x), newly reconstituted fractions and phenolic compounds (100x) compared to each other, #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001.

Assessing the results for ER $\alpha$ , it is evident that neither mangiferin nor luteolin at 100x their concentration in F3R, individually or combined with other polyphenols (F3R Man 100x & F3R Lut 100x), are potentially responsible for the ER $\alpha$  agonist activity observed with F3R (100x). Mangiferin (100x) and F3R Man 100x displayed no significant estrogenic activity, and their responses were significantly (P<0.01) lower than F3R (100x). Luteolin (100x) and F3R Lut 100x, on the other hand, displayed significant (P<0.001) agonist activity with no significant difference observed between them, however, the activity of luteolin (100x) and F3R Lut 100x was significantly (P<0.05) lower than that of F3R (100x). These results suggests that, even though luteolin appears to be the main estrogenic contributor, one or more

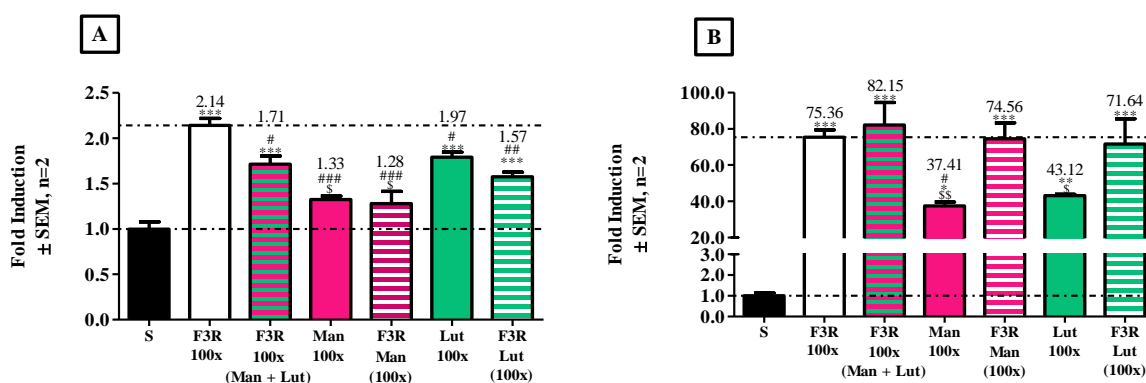
of the other major phenolic compounds, at 100x their concentrations, are also contributing to F3R (100x)'s agonist activity via ER $\alpha$ .

For ER $\beta$ , it is apparent that mangiferin (10x) is responsible for the activity observed with F3R (10x). However, at 100x their concentration in F3R, the two individual phytoestrogenic phenolic compounds (luteolin and mangiferin) displayed significantly ( $P < 0.01$ ) lower activity than observed with F3R (100x). Yet, when combined with the rest of the major phenolic compounds, F3R Lut 100x and F3R Man 100x displayed no significant difference compared to F3R (100x). This suggests that either both mangiferin and luteolin contribute to F3R (100x)'s robust agonist activity in an additive or possibly synergistic manner, or that the non-estrogenic compounds in F3R (isomangiferin, scolymoside, iriflophenone-3-*C*-glucoside, *p*-coumaric acid and protocatechuic acid) are enhancing the phytoestrogenic activity of mangiferin and luteolin.

Consequently, F3R was again reconstituted with the 5 non-estrogenic phenolic compounds at 1x their concentrations in the F3 fraction, and with both mangiferin and luteolin at 100x their concentration, to examine if an increase in activity is observed when both the estrogenic phenolic compounds are present at 100x their concentration (Figure 5.8 A & B).

F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, like F3R Man 100x and F3R Lut 100x, displayed significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) lower ER $\alpha$  activity compared to F3R (100x) (Figure 5.8 A). F3R Man 100x was also a significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) 1.34-fold lower than F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, whereas F3R Lut 100x displayed no significant difference from F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, again demonstrating that, in contrast to luteolin, mangiferin is not the main contributor to the estrogenic activity of F3R (Man + Lut) 100x via ER $\alpha$ . Furthermore, the newly reconstructed fractions (F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, F3R Man 100x and F3R Lut 100x) and F3R (100x) displayed no significant

difference in activity via ER $\beta$ , indicating that mangiferin and luteolin's role in F3R's activity via ER $\beta$  may be interchangeable (Figure 5.8 B).



**Figure 5.8: Promotor reporter studies comparing the activity of F3R, the newly reconstructed fractions, F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, F3R Lut 100x and F3R Man 100x via ER $\alpha$  (A) and ER $\beta$  (B) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ ), ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with F3R (100x), F3R (Man + Lut) 100x, F3R Lut 100x and F3R Man 100x, as well as individual estrogenic phenolic compounds, mangiferin (100x) and luteolin (100x). Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001. Activity of F3R (100x) compared to the newly reconstituted fractions or individual phenolic compounds (100x), #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001, and F3R (Man + Lut) 100x compared to F3R Lut 100x and F3R Man 100x, \$P<0.05, \$\$P<0.01, \$\$\$P<0.001.

In addition, subtraction of the individual phenolic compounds from 100x F3R were conducted to further validate mangiferin and luteolin's involvement in the activity observed in 100x F3R, and to investigate the role of the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds (Figure S.4). Since the compounds are expensive and limited, this study was only conducted via ER $\beta$ . Unfortunately, mangiferin lost its ER agonist activity, and the activity observed in the 100x F3R was only due to 100x luteolin (Figure S.4).

One of the limitations of cell culture experimental systems is the cell's vulnerability to external changes, such as nutrition, humidity, temperature, CO<sub>2</sub> and pH, which could influence the cell's uptake of nutrients and hormones [74–77]. Apart from the fragility of the cells, phenolic compounds are also susceptible to external factors, such as storage conditions, temperature, exposure to light and oxygen, and the composition and quality of the solvent or medium. These various factors could cause deprotonation, oxidation or degradation of the

compounds and could result in the loss of function or desired activity [78–85]. Investigating the possible causes for the loss of mangiferin's once robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity, the composition of the cell culture medium and the structural integrity of the compound was investigated.

Within our research group, it was noted that the pre-made phenol red medium transitioned colour from red to a pink-red colour during storage, indicating that the pH of the medium shifted from neutral to alkaline [86,87]. The pH of the medium was always adjusted to 7.2 during preparation, but after being stored for a few weeks (2 weeks and longer), the pH of the pre-made medium tested at  $\geq 9$ . The general protocol for medium preparation was adapted (by changing the sodium bicarbonate concentration), with the purpose of ensuring more stable medium pH levels during storage and cell culture maintenance. At the time, this change in protocol was not thought to be a contributing factor to the observed change in phytoactivity of mangiferin, since the activity of the E<sub>2</sub> controls did not change. However, recent publications have indicated the importance of pH in the bio-activity of mangiferin [85]. The ramifications of pH drifting will be further addressed in the conclusion.

Another possible cause for mangiferin's loss of activity was thought to be due to the breakdown of the compound during storage. LC-MS (Figure S.5) and NMR (Figure S.6) were used to investigate this theory [88–91]. There was, however, no structural degradation observed between any of the mangiferin stocks (26/09/14, 25/10/14, 07/04/15 and 16/06/15)<sup>§</sup>, since they all displayed the expected molecular mass of 422g/mol and molecular formula of C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>18</sub>O<sub>11</sub>, while the <sup>1</sup>H-NMR signals correlated with previous studies [90,92–94]. Interestingly, an additional structure was observed in the mangiferin sample with a molecular mass of 436g/mol and molecular formula of C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>20</sub>O<sub>11</sub> (Figure S.5). NMR results (Figure S.7), and findings from literature, confirm that the second compound was homomangiferin

---

<sup>§</sup> Mangiferin stocks were labelled according to the date the compounds were received from the manufacturer.

[88,89,91]. In addition to testing the bought mangiferin stocks, mangiferin recently isolated from *Cyclopia* (Gerderblom *et al.* 2016, unpublished) was also included in the NMR study. Homomangiferin was, surprisingly, not detected in Gelderblom's sample. Like mangiferin, not much is known about homomangiferin's possible phytoestrogenic activity.

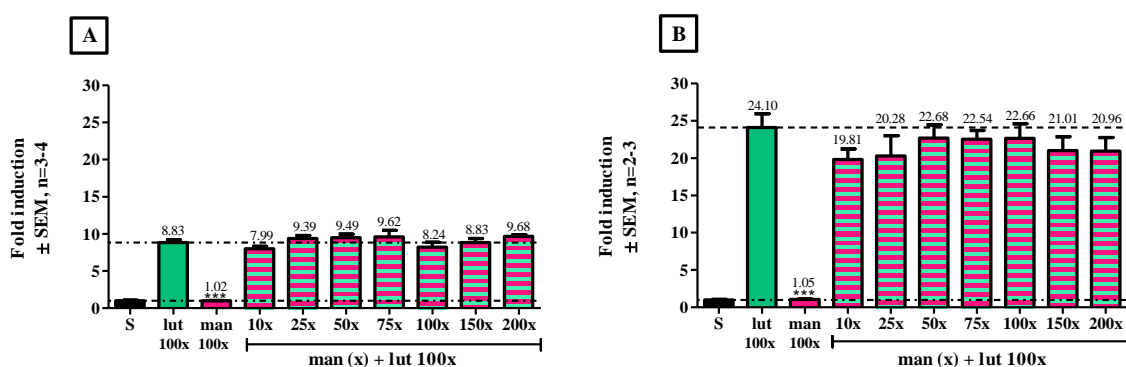
Findings from this section highlight the importance of all the compounds in F3R, and subsequently F3. Even though mangiferin and the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds did not show a contribution to F3R's activity in the subtraction study (Figure S.4), their contribution to F3's activity should not be dismissed.

### **5.2.3. Combination of the estrogenic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, to investigate possible interaction**

There are different methods to investigate possible combinatorial activity or synergism including the median effect analysis, response surface analysis, combination index, and the isobole method of Berenbaum [18,95–98]. The latter is one of the easier methods to test for additive/synergistic activity since it is a demonstrative method and it is also independent of the mechanisms of action [18].

The isobologram, by Tallarida *et al.* [96], is a more simplified approach to the isobole method and uses fixed ratio combinations of the drug  $EC_{50}$ 's instead of a range of drug  $EC_{50}$  combinations. This is a more cost effective approach, since less of the compounds are used. It was, however, not possible to combine mangiferin and luteolin at a fixed ratio manner (as demonstrated by Tallarida *et al.* [96]), due to the loss of mangiferin's once robust phytoestrogenic activity. A different approach to this complication was to use increasing concentrations of mangiferin combined with the  $EC_{50}$  concentration ( $4 \times 10^{-6}$  M) of luteolin, which is similar to luteolin (100x) (Figure 5.6 C & D), with the hope of mangiferin regaining activity in the presence of luteolin.

Luteolin (100x) displayed phytoestrogenic activity via both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , at  $8.83 \pm 0.39$  and  $24.10 \pm 1.05$  fold induction, respectively (Figure 5.9 A & B). Mangiferin (100x), on the other hand, displayed no estrogenic activity. The activity observed with the combination of the two polyphenols, displayed no significant difference when compared to luteolin (100x) alone, suggesting that luteolin is the only polyphenol out of the 7 major phenolic compounds that displayed phytoestrogenic activity at this stage of the study, validating previous results (Figure S.4).



**Figure 5.9: Promoter reporter studies investigating the combined effect of mangiferin and luteolin on ER $\alpha$  (A) and ER $\beta$  (B) transactivation in agonist mode:** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with  $4.74 \times 10^{-6}$  M luteolin (100x) combined with increasing concentrations of mangiferin,  $2.68 \times 10^{-5}$  –  $5.36 \times 10^{-4}$  M (10x – 200x). All compounds normalised to solvent, set as 1. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett's Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to lut (100x) (turquoise bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001.

Even though the estrogenic activity of mangiferin could not be restored in the presence of luteolin, mangiferin should not be dismissed as a possible candidate to F3R's (and subsequently F3's) agonist activity as recent studies have now demonstrated that mangiferin has phytoestrogenic potential [68,73]. Furthermore, to fully demonstrate the possible combinatorial or synergism potential of F3R, the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds should also be considered in future studies, since the estrogenic phenolic compounds (mangiferin and luteolin), on their own, previously displayed lower activity compared to F3R in the current study (Figure 5.8).



### 5.3. Conclusion

Traditional medicine, which gained knowledge through observing nature, formed the foundation upon which modern medicine is built [99,100]. The development and improvement of chemical and analytical techniques provided insight into the phytochemical composition of medicinal plants, and created a platform for the identification, isolation and synthesis of single, well characterised, active compounds that are target specific [14,15,101]. However, as modern medicine evolved, new challenges arose (drug resistance, dangerous side effects and decreased drug efficacy) and a renewed approach to therapy development is needed to overcome these problems [102–106].

Medicinal plants consist of various phytochemicals that interact in complex molecular networks to achieve stability, as well as to enhance the bioavailability and potency of the active compounds [12,19,107]. Whole plant extracts and combination therapies have been shown to be more effective than mono-therapies (which only focus on single active or target specific compounds in plant extracts) in treating multifaceted diseases, such as cancer [33,62,95,108–110]. Nevertheless, medicinal plants need to be used with caution, since often their mechanism of action is not as well studied compared to mono-therapies and synthetic drugs [45,46,111]. Perhaps, combining the knowledge of traditional plant medicine with the support of scientific methods would produce intelligent drug mixtures capable of overcoming the current limitations of modern medicine [9,112].

*Cyclopia*, indigenous to South Africa's fynbos biome and traditionally used as a herbal tea, has gained growing interest for its health benefits, and various studies have demonstrated its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, -diabetic and -mutagenic properties as well as chemopreventive activity [6,24–28,32,33]. This potential multi-action activity of *Cyclopia* makes it an ideal candidate for nutraceutical, and possible pharmaceutical, therapy development. The

current study forms part of a larger, ongoing investigation to identify the active and contributing components of the *Cyclopia* extracts and fractions previously isolated [23,31–33,42], with the purpose of creating the ideal nutraceutical to combat estrogen-related diseases, and avoid drug resistance, toxicity and side effects.

*Cyclopia* extracts and fractions, like most plant material, consist of a vast variety of phenolic compounds. Some of these compounds have previously been identified in our research group [23,32,33] and by other groups [113–116], however, their combined activity and interactions have not yet been established. The main interest of the current study, therefore, was to investigate the combinatorial activity of some phenolic compounds identified and quantified in F3, a fraction isolated from the *Cyclopia subternata* extract, SM6Met [30,33]. What distinguished F3 from the other SM6Met fractions was its robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity [33]. ER $\alpha$  is known to induce cell proliferation, whereas ER $\beta$  has shown anti-proliferative activity by antagonising ER $\alpha$ , and therefore, compounds that mediate their response via ER $\beta$  is of great interest in the development of treatments for estrogen-related diseases [35–38].

As mentioned previously, only the 7 major phenolic compounds were used as a starting point, to investigate their contribution to F3's robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity [33]. Some of these phenolic compounds, such as luteolin, have previously shown phytoestrogenic activity in different experimental systems [30,42,53,73]. Interestingly, however, when F3 was reconstituted using the 7 major phenolic compounds at their concentrations in F3, no significant ER activity was observed (Figure 5.1). Possible reasons could be: (1) the minor phenolic compounds, alone or in combination, are responsible for F3's estrogenic activity, (2) the minor compounds create a supportive environment for the active major compounds to elicit a response, or (3) there are still unidentified major phenolic compounds in F3 responsible for its phytoestrogenic activity.

However, when F3 was reconstituted at 100x its concentration (F3R (100x)), a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) increase in activity was observed via both ER subtypes. In addition, F3R (100x)'s activity was a significant 1.59- and 2.66-fold higher than that of F3, via ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , respectively (Figure 5.1). Luteolin was thought to be the cause of this increase in activity, since a literature search at the time indicated that it was the only compound to have previously been shown to display estrogenic activity via both ER subtypes [23,30,42,54,55]. However, when the 7 individual phenolic compounds were tested at increasing concentrations (10x and 100x their concentration in F3), both mangiferin and luteolin displayed significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) ER $\beta$  agonist activity at higher concentrations (100x). In fact mangiferin already display significant activity at 10x its concentration (Figure 5.3).

At this stage of the study, not much was known about mangiferin's phytoestrogenic activity, and the ER mediated mode of action of both estrogenic phenolic compounds was investigated further. Both mangiferin and luteolin displayed binding activity to both ER subtypes and their transactivation via both ER subtypes was significantly antagonised by ICI 182,780 (fulvestrant), indicating that their estrogenic activity is mediated via the ER (Figure 5.4 & 5.5). To our knowledge, mangiferin's ER $\beta$  mediated activity is a novel finding, with literature only presenting ER $\alpha$  related activity [68,73].

To understand the contribution of mangiferin and luteolin to the ER $\beta$  activity of F3R (100x), both 'addition' and 'subtraction' studies were conducted. Addition studies entailed reconstituting mangiferin and luteolin at 100x their concentration in F3R, separately (Figure 5.7) as well as combined (Figure 5.8), and with or without the other phenolic compounds at 1x their concentration in F3R. From these results it became clear that, even though luteolin and mangiferin were the only two estrogenic compounds in F3R, they were not the only contributing factor to the ER $\beta$  mediated activity of F3R (100x), since their individual activities were significantly lower than that of the reconstituted fraction, F3R (100x). For

example, mangiferin (100x) was a significant ( $P < 0.01$ ) 2-fold lower than F3R Man (100x) and F3R (100x) via ER $\beta$  (Figure 5.8 B). F3R 100x (Man & Lut), on the other hand, displayed no significant difference compared to F3R (100x), F3R Man (100x) or F3R Lut (100x), indicating that the concentration of the two estrogenic phenolic compounds in F3R (100x) are interchangeable, and that either one at 100x their concentration, in combination with the rest of the phenolic compounds, will produce the same response as F3R (100x).

With subtraction studies (Figure S.4), each phenolic compound was “subtracted” from F3R (100x) by individually adding them at 1x their concentration, while the rest of the phenolic compounds were reconstituted at 100x their concentration in F3R. By doing this, we had expected to identify which of the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds in F3R contributed to the activity of the estrogenic phenolic compounds. Unfortunately, at this stage of the study, mangiferin lost its estrogenic activity, and luteolin appeared to be the only remaining active and contributing component in F3R, with no significant difference between luteolin (100x) and F3R (100x) (Figure S.4). Possible synergistic activity could, therefore, not be determined (Figure 5.9).

Different stocks of mangiferin (26/09/14, 25/10/14, 07/04/15 and 16/06/15) were tested to determine if degradation of the compound had occurred, however, no structural change was detected via LC-MS (Figure S.5) and NMR (Figure S.6) studies. On the other hand, homomangiferin was also detected in the mangiferin stocks (Figure S.5 & Figure S.7). Plant sources that are used to isolate mangiferin, for example *Mangifera indica* or *Rhizoma anemarrhenae*, also contains other xanthone glucosides such as isomangiferin, homomangiferin and neomangiferin [60,88–90,117,118]. Furthermore, mangiferin also produces more than 20 possible metabolites, which begs the question if there were other undetected metabolites in the mangiferin sample [73,88,119]. In a recent study by Wilkinson *et al.* [73], for example, norathyriol (a putative metabolite and aglycone derivative of

mangiferin [119,120]) showed strong phytoestrogenic activity via both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , and was able to reduce MCF-7 cell viability, in contrast to mangiferin, which was only able to act via ER $\alpha$ .

Furthermore, the modification in the medium preparation protocol should also be considered as a possible factor involved in the change observed in mangiferin (Figure 5.9) and consequently F3R's activity (Figure S.4). Medium preparation instructions and suggested sodium bicarbonate concentration were obtained from the manufacturer's protocol. Although the pH of the medium was adjusted to 7.2 during preparation, it came to our attention that long storage of pre-made medium has resulted in a pH increase (pH $\geq$ 9). Upon further investigation, it became apparent that the buffer capacity of the suggested sodium bicarbonate concentration is ideal for a 10% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator (although not specifically stated by the manufacturer) and not for a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator, as used in our facilities. The buffer capacity could also not compensate for the lower atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> (0.04%) captured in the bottle when sealed, resulting in a gradual pH shift during storage. The sodium bicarbonate concentration was since adapted to compensate and prevent this pH increase during storage, especially since cells are sensitive to the cell culture environment and external factors such as pH [74–77,121].

In addition to affecting cell behaviour, variation in pH levels can also affect phytochemicals, particularly phenolic acids [76,81,82,122–124]. Phenolic acids are renowned for their role in food quality and colour, and have beneficial antioxidant properties, but have been shown to be less stable in alkaline environments and maybe converted from an antioxidant to a pro-oxidant [49,81,82,123–126]. In the current study, two of the 7 major phenolic compounds in F3R are phenolic acids, namely protocatechuic acid and *p*-coumaric acid. In a study conducted by Chethan *et al.* [124], the phenolic acid content of their polyphenol rich seed coat fraction (PRSCF), which also included protocatechuic acid and *p*-

coumaric acid, decreased with increasing pH levels. Furthermore, a pH-induced shift in the ultraviolet absorption spectra of phenolic acids were noticed, which is an indication of compound instability and is influenced by the nature of the compound and its surroundings [81,124]. pH drifting could also affect hydroxyl groups in other phenolic compounds, such as mangiferin, which contains four aromatic hydroxyl groups [63,81,85]. For example, a recent study by Mendoza-Sarmiento *et al.* [85], demonstrated the deprotonation of mangiferin's four hydroxyl groups between pH 7 and 9.6, which consequently increased mangiferin's peroxyl radical scavenging activity.

To conclude, the findings from the current study, as well as from other studies, reveals the complexity of plant extracts and further supports the argument that taking F3 apart may not be the ideal approach to investigating its possible synergistic mechanisms of action [7,16–19]. It is evident that the minor phenolic compounds play a crucial role in F3 and F3R's estrogenic activity, either by directly contributing to the estrogenic activity or more probably by creating a supportive environment for the estrogenic phenolic compounds. Further research is, however, needed regarding the influence of pH on F3R, the contributions of the minor phenolic compounds, and if mangiferin's activity is influenced by deprotonation.

## 5.4. References

1. Bhanot A, Sharma R, Noolvi MN. Natural sources as potential anti-cancer agents: A review. *Int J Phytomedicine*. 2011;3: 09–26.
2. Kumari M, Jain S, Singh J. Nutraceutical – Medicine of the future. *J Glob Biosci* . 2015;4: 2790–2794.
3. Willis MS, Wians FH. The role of nutrition in preventing prostate cancer: A review of the proposed mechanism of action of various dietary substances. *Clin Chim Acta*. 2003;330: 57–83.
4. Bravo L. Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. *Nutr Rev*. 1998;56: 317–333.

5. Ames BN. Micronutrients prevent cancer and delay aging. *Toxicol Lett.* 1998;102–103: 5–18.
6. McKay DL, Blumberg JB. A Review of the Bioactivity of South African Herbal Teas: Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*). *Phyther Res.* 2007;21: 1–16.
7. Liu RH. Health benefits of fruit and vegetables are from additive and synergistic combinations of phytochemicals. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2003;78: 3–6.
8. Lampe JW. Health effects of vegetables and fruit: assessing mechanisms of action in human experimental studies. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 1999;70: 475S–490.
9. Patwardhan B, Vaidya ADB, Chorghade M. Ayurveda and natural products drug discovery. *Curr Sci.* 2004;86: 789–799.
10. Wang Z-G, Ren J. Current status and future direction of Chinese herbal medicine. *Trends Pharmacol Sci.* 2002;23: 347–348.
11. Benie T, Thieulant ML. Interaction of some traditional plant extracts with uterine oestrogen or progesterin receptors. *Phyther Res.* 2003;17: 756–760.
12. HemaIswarya S, Doble M. Potential synergism of natural products in the treatment of cancer. *Phytother Res.* 2006;20: 239–249.
13. Okigbo RN, Mmekka EC. An Appraisal of Phytomedicine in Africa. *KMITL Sci Tech J.* 2006;6: 83–94.
14. Balunas MJ, Kinghorn DA. Drug discovery from medicinal plants. *Life Sci.* 2005;78: 431–441.
15. Corson TW, Crews CM. Molecular Understanding and Modern Application of Traditional Medicines: Triumphs and Trials. *Cell.* 2007;130: 769–774.
16. Liu RH. Potential synergy of phytochemicals in cancer prevention: mechanism of action. *J Nutr.* 2004;134: 3479S–3485S.
17. Gertsch J. Botanical drugs, synergy, and network pharmacology: Forth and back to intelligent mixtures. *Planta Med.* 2011;77: 1086–1098.
18. Wagner H. Synergy research: Approaching a new generation of phytopharmaceuticals. *Fitoterapia.* 2011;82: 34–37.
19. Efferth T, Koch E. Complex interactions between phytochemicals. The multi-target therapeutic concept of phytotherapy. *Curr Drug Targets.* 2011;12: 122–132.
20. Eisenbrand G, Hippe F, Jakobs S, Muehlbeyer S. Molecular mechanisms of indirubin

- and its derivatives: Novel anticancer molecules with their origin in traditional Chinese phytomedicine. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol*. 2004;130: 627–635.
21. Chaudhary T, Chahar A, Sharma JK, Kaur K, Dang A. Phytomedicine in the Treatment of Cancer : A Health Technology Assessment. 2015;9: 10–15.
  22. Vauzour D, Rodriguez-Mateos A, Corona G, Oruna-Concha MJ, Spencer JPE. Polyphenols and human health: Prevention of disease and mechanisms of action. *Nutrients*. 2010;2: 1106–1131.
  23. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of *Cyclopia genistoides* (Honeybush) methanol extracts and relevant polyphenols. *J Agric Food Chem*. 2007;55: 4371–4381.
  24. Muller CJF, Joubert E, Gabuza K, Beer D De, Fey SJ, Louw J. Assessment of the Antidiabetic Potential of an Aqueous Extract of Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*) in Streptozotocin and Obese Insulin Resistant Wistar Rats. In: Iraj Rasooli, editor. *Phytochemicals - Bioactivities and Impact on Health*. InTech; 2010. pp. 313–333.
  25. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M. Honeybush (*Cyclopia* sp.) - A rich source of compounds with high antimutagenic properties. *Fitoterapia*. Elsevier B.V.; 2009;80: 3–11.
  26. de Beer D, Schulze A, Joubert E, de Villiers A, Malherbe C, Stander M. Food Ingredient Extracts of *Cyclopia subternata* (Honeybush): Variation in Phenolic Composition and Antioxidant Capacity. *Molecules*. 2012;17: 14602–14624.
  27. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Pawlowska J, Luczkiewicz P, Sowinski P, Witkowski J, *et al*. Isolation of xanthone and benzophenone derivatives from *Cyclopia genistoides* (L.) Vent. (honeybush) and their pro-apoptotic activity on synoviocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Fitoterapia*. Elsevier B.V.; 2013;90: 199–208.
  28. Visser K, Zierau O, Macejová D, Goerl F, Muders M, Baretton GB, *et al*. The phytoestrogenic *Cyclopia* extract, SM6Met, increases median tumor free survival and reduces tumor mass and volume in chemically induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2016; 1–7.
  29. Du Toit J, Joubert E, Britz TJ. Honeybush Tea-A Rediscovered Indigenous South African Herbal Tea. *J Sustain Agric*. 1998;12: 67–84.
  30. Louw A, Joubert E, Visser K. Phytoestrogenic potential of *Cyclopia* extracts and polyphenols. *Planta Med*. 2013;79: 580–590.
  31. Mfenyana C, DeBeer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity and benchmarking against commercial phytoestrogen extracts. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2008;112: 74–86.
  32. Visser K, Mortimer M, Louw A. *Cyclopia* extracts act as ER $\alpha$  antagonists and ER $\beta$



- agonists, *in vitro* and *in vivo*. PLoS One. 2013;8: 1–22.
33. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia* nutraceutical extract, SM6Met. PLoS One. 2015;10: 1–22.
  34. van Rooij IAJ, Broekmans FJM, Scheffer GJ, Looman CWN, Habbema JDF, de Jong FH, *et al.* Serum antimullerian hormone levels best reflect the reproductive decline with age in normal women with proven fertility: a longitudinal study. Fertil Steril. 2005;83: 979–87.
  35. Lattrich C, Stegerer A, Häring J, Schüler S, Ortmann O, Treeck O. Estrogen receptor  $\beta$  agonists affect growth and gene expression of human breast cancer cell lines. Steroids. Elsevier Inc.; 2013;78: 195–202.
  36. Sareddy GR, Vadlamudi RK. Cancer therapy using natural ligands that target estrogen receptor beta. Chin J Nat Med. China Pharmaceutical University; 2015;13: 801–807.
  37. Leitman DC, Paruthiyil S, Vivar OI, Saunier EF, Herber CB, Cohen I, *et al.* Regulation of specific target genes and biological responses by estrogen receptor subtype agonists. Curr Opin Pharmacol. Elsevier Ltd; 2010;10: 629–636.
  38. Warner M, Gustafsson J-Å. The role of estrogen receptor beta (ERbeta) in malignant diseases - a new potential target for antiproliferative drugs in prevention and treatment of cancer. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2010;396: 63–6.
  39. Mortimer MF. Isolation and identification of compounds conferring phytoestrogenic activity to *Cyclopia* extracts. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2014.
  40. Pan M-H, Chiou Y-S, Chen L-H, Ho C-T. Breast cancer chemoprevention by dietary natural phenolic compounds: specific epigenetic related molecular targets. Mol Nutr Food Res. 2015;59: 21–35.
  41. Jungbauer A, Medjakovic S. Phytoestrogens and the metabolic syndrome. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;139: 277–289.
  42. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Screening of four *Cyclopia* (honeybush) species for putative phyto-oestrogenic activity by oestrogen receptor binding assays. S Afr J Sci. 2007; 13–21.
  43. Reich MR. The Global Drug Gap. Science (80- ). 2000;287: 1979–1982.
  44. Panay N, Rees M. Alternatives to hormone replacement therapy for management of menopause symptoms. Curr Obstet Gynaecol. 2005;15: 259–266.
  45. Calixto JB. Efficacy, safety, quality control, marketing and regulatory guidelines for herbal medicines (phytotherapeutic agents). Brazilian J Med Biol Res. 2000;33: 179–

- 189.
46. Niggemann B, Grüber C. Side-effects of complementary and alternative medicine. *Allergy*. 2003;58: 707–716.
  47. Sirotkin A V, Harrath AH. Phytoestrogens and their effects. *Eur J Pharmacol*. Elsevier; 2014;741: 230–236.
  48. Kim ND, Mehta R, Yu WP, Neeman I, Livney T, Amichay a, *et al*. Chemopreventive and adjuvant therapeutic potential of pomegranate (*Punica granatum*) for human breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat*. 2002;71: 203–217.
  49. Kampa M, Alexaki V-I, Notas G, Nifli A-P, Nistikaki A, Hatzoglou A, *et al*. Antiproliferative and apoptotic effects of selective phenolic acids on T47D human breast cancer cells: potential mechanisms of action. *Breast Cancer Res*. 2004;6: R63–R74.
  50. Jaganathan SK, Supriyanto E, Mandal M. Events associated with apoptotic effect of *p*-Coumaric acid in HCT-15 colon cancer cells. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2013;19: 7726–34.
  51. Yip ECH, Chan ASL, Pang H, Tam YK, Wong YH. Protocatechuic acid induces cell death in HepG2 hepatocellular carcinoma cells through a c-Jun N-terminal kinase-dependent mechanism. *Cell Biol Toxicol*. 2006;22: 293–302.
  52. Link A, Balaguer F, Goel A. Cancer chemoprevention by dietary polyphenols: Promising role for epigenetics. *Biochem Pharmacol*. Elsevier Inc.; 2010;80: 1771–1792.
  53. Innocenti G, Vegeto E, Dall’Acqua S, Ciana P, Giorgetti M, Agradi E, *et al*. *In vitro* estrogenic activity of *Achillea millefolium* L. *Phytomedicine*. 2007;14: 147–152.
  54. Lin Y, Shi R, Wang X, Shen H-M. Luteolin, a flavonoid with potentials for cancer prevention and therapy. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets*. 2008;8: 634–646.
  55. Collins-Burow BM, Burow ME, Duong BN, McLachlan J. Estrogenic and Antiestrogenic Activities of Flavonoid Phytochemicals Through Estrogen Receptor Binding-Dependent and -Independent Mechanisms. *Nutr Cancer*. 2000;38: 229–244.
  56. Dillard CJ, Bruce German J. Phytochemicals: Nutraceuticals and human health. *J Sci Food Agric*. 2000;80: 1744–1756.
  57. Tuorkey MJ. Molecular targets of luteolin in cancer. *Eur J Cancer Prev*. 2016;25: 65–76.
  58. Rajendran P, Rengarajan T, Nandakumar N, Divya H, Nishigaki I. Mangiferin in cancer chemoprevention and treatment: pharmacokinetics and molecular targets. *J Recept Signal Transduct Res*. 2015;35: 76–84.

59. Lim J, Liu Z, Apontes P, Feng D, Pessin JE, Sauve A a, *et al.* Dual mode action of mangiferin in mouse liver under high fat diet. *PLoS One*. 2014;9: e90137.
60. Masibo M, Qian H. Major mango polyphenols and their potential significance to human health. *Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf*. 2008;7: 309–319.
61. Zhao Y, Yang G, Ren D, Zhang X, Yin Q, Sun X. Luteolin suppresses growth and migration of human lung cancer cells. *Mol Biol Rep*. 2011;38: 1115–9.
62. Jeon YW, Suh YJ. Synergistic apoptotic effect of celecoxib and luteolin on breast cancer cells. *Oncol Rep*. 2013;29: 819–825.
63. Li HH, Huang J, Yang B, Xiang T, Yin X, Peng W, *et al.* Mangiferin exerts antitumor activity in breast cancer cells by regulating matrix metalloproteinases, epithelial to mesenchymal transition, and  $\beta$ -catenin signaling pathway. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 2013;272: 180–90.
64. García-Rivera D, Delgado R, Bougarne N, Haegeman G, Vanden Berghe W. Gallic acid indanone and mangiferin xanthone are strong determinants of immunosuppressive anti-tumour effects of *Mangifera indica* L. bark in MDA-MB231 breast cancer cells. *Cancer Lett*. 2011;305: 21–31.
65. Gold-Smith F, Fernandez A, Bishop K. Mangiferin and cancer: Mechanisms of action. *Nutrients*. Multidisciplinary Digital Publishing Institute; 2016;8: 16–20.
66. Heldring N, Pike A, Andersson S, Matthews J, Cheng G, Treuter E, *et al.* Estrogen Receptors : How Do They Signal and What Are Their Targets. *Physiol Rev* . 2007;87: 905–931.
67. Prossnitz ER, Maggiolini M. Mechanisms of estrogen signaling and gene expression via GPR30. *Mol Cell Endocrinol*. 2009;308: 32–38.
68. Kitalong C, Ali M, El-Dine R. Phenolics from *Phaleria nisidai* with Estrogenic Activity. *Rec Nat Prod*. 2012;3: 296–300.
69. Robertson JF. ICI 182,780 (Fulvestrant) - the first oestrogen receptor down-regulator--current clinical data. *Br J Cancer*. 2001;85 Suppl 2: 11–4.
70. Osborne CK, Wakeling A, Nicholson RI. Fulvestrant: an oestrogen receptor antagonist with a novel mechanism of action. *Br J Cancer*. Nature Publishing Group; 2004;90 Suppl 1: S2-6.
71. Calabrese EJ. Estrogen and related compounds : Biphasic dose responses. *Crit Rev Toxicol*. 2001;31: 503–515.
72. Jordan VC. Selective estrogen receptor modulation: Concept and consequences in cancer. *Cancer Cell*. 2004;5: 207–213.

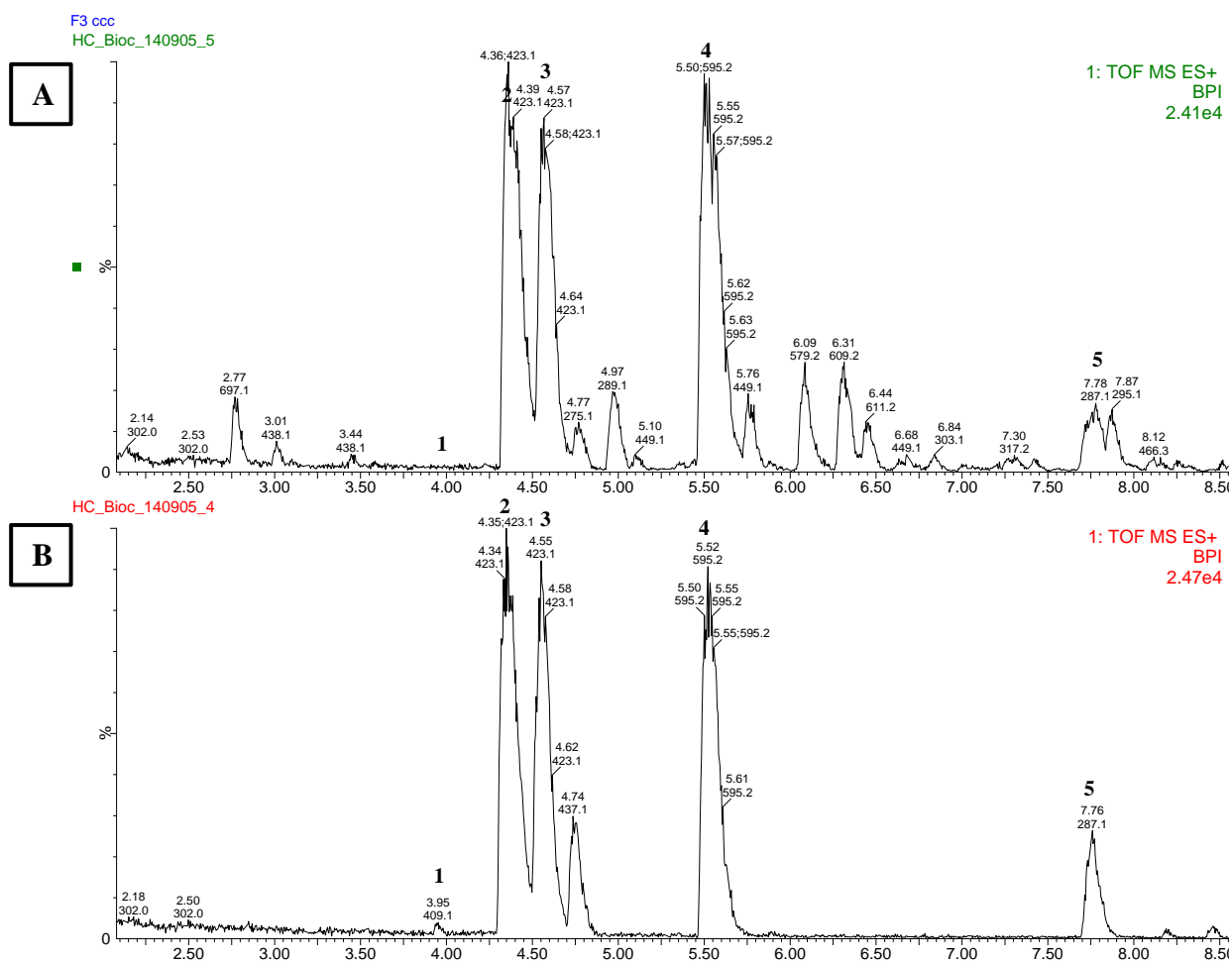
73. Wilkinson AS, Taing M-W, Pierson JT, Lin C-N, Dietzgen RG, Shaw PN, *et al.* Estrogen modulation properties of mangiferin and quercetin and the mangiferin metabolite norathyriol. *Food Funct.* Royal Society of Chemistry; 2015;6: 1847–1854.
74. Swim HE, Parker RF. The Role of Carbon Dioxide as an Essential Nutrient for Six Permanent Strains of Fibroblasts. *J Biophys Biochem Cytol.* 1958;4: 525–528.
75. Mackenzie CG, Mackenzie JB, Beck P. The effect of pH on growth, protein synthesis, and lipid-rich particles of cultured mammalian cells. *J Biophys Biochem Cytol.* The Rockefeller University Press; 1961;9: 141–56.
76. Vasil IK, Thorpe TA. *Plant Cell and Tissue Culture.* Vasil IK, Thorpe TA, editors. Netherland: Kluwer Academic; 1994.
77. Taylor AC. Responses of cells to pH changes in the medium. *J Cell Biol.* 1962;15: 201–209.
78. Aziz ABA, Abdel-Wahab FK, El-Ghandour MA. Effect of different storage temperatures on phenolic compounds in banana and mango fruits. *Sci Hortic (Amsterdam).* Elsevier; 1976;4: 309–315.
79. Ayala-Zavala JF, Wang SY, Wang CY, Gonz! Alez-Aguilar GA. Effect of storage temperatures on antioxidant capacity and aroma compounds in strawberry fruit. 2004;37: 687–695.
80. Zhou Y-HH, Zhang Y-YY, Zhao X, Yu H-JJ, Shi K, Yu J-QQ. Impact of light variation on development of photoprotection, antioxidants, and nutritional value in *Lactuca sativa* L. *J Agric Food Chem.* 2009;57: 5494–5500.
81. Friedman M, Jürgens HS. Effect of pH on the stability of plant phenolic compounds. *J Agric Food Chem.* 2000;48: 2101–2110.
82. Amorati R, Pedulli GF, Cabrini L, Zambonin L, Landi L. Solvent and pH effects on the antioxidant activity of caffeic and other phenolic acids. *J Agric Food Chem.* 2006;54: 2932–2937.
83. Klimczak I, Malecka M, Szlachta M, Gliszczynska-Swiglo A. Effect of storage on the content of polyphenols, vitamin C and the antioxidant activity of orange juices. *J Food Compos Anal.* 2007;20: 313–322.
84. Ananingsih VK, Sharma A, Zhou W. Green tea catechins during food processing and storage: A review on stability and detection. *Food Res Int.* 2013;50: 469–479.
85. Mendoza-Sarmiento G, Rojas-Her Andez A, Galano A, Gutiérrez A. A combined experimental–theoretical study of the acid–base behavior of mangiferin: implications for its antioxidant activity. *R Soc Chem.* 2016;6: 51171–51182.
86. Welshons W V., Wolf MF, Murphy CS, Jordan VC. Estrogenic activity of phenol red.

- Mol Cell Endocrinol. 1988;57: 169–178.
87. de Araújo AL, Radvanyi F. Determination of phospholipase A 2 activity by a colorimetric assay using a pH indicator. *Toxicon*. Pergamon; 1987;25: 1181–1188.
  88. Wu Z, Wei G, Lian G, Yu B. Synthesis of mangiferin, isomangiferin, and homomangiferin. *J Org Chem*. 2010;75: 5725–8.
  89. Qin J, Deng J, Feng X, Wang Q, Wang S. Quantitative RP–LC Analysis of Mangiferin and Homomangiferin in *Mangifera indica* L. Leaves and in *Mangifera persiciforma* C.Y. Wu et T.L. Ming Leaves. *Chromatographia*. 2008;68: 955–960.
  90. Young Kim C, Ahn M, Kim J. Preparative Isolation of Mangiferin from *Anemarrhena asphodeloides* Rhizomes by Centrifugal Partition Chromatography. *J Liq Chromatogr Relat Technol*. 2006;29: 869–875.
  91. De Souza JRR. Mangiferin: Microencapsulation in pectin / chitosan systems, *in vitro* intestinal metabolism and anticancer activity. Federal University of Ceará. 2012.
  92. Shahat A, Hassan RA, Nazif NM, Van Miert S, Pieters L, Hammuda FM, *et al.* Isolation of Mangiferin from *Bombax malabaricum* and Structure Revision of Shamimin. *Planta Med*. 2003;69: 1068–1070.
  93. Gomez-Zaleta B, Ramirez-Silva MT, Gutierrez A, Gonzalez-Vergara E, Guizado-Rodriguez M, Rojas-Hernandez A. UV/vis, 1H, and 13C NMR spectroscopic studies to determine mangiferin pKa values. *Spectrochim Acta - Part A Mol Biomol Spectrosc*. 2006;64: 1002–1009.
  94. Bhuvaneswari K. Isolation of Mangiferin from leaves of *Mangifera indica* L. Var Alphonso. *Asian J Pharm Clin Res*. 2013;6: 173–174.
  95. Breiting H-G. Drug synergy – mechanisms and methods of analysis. *Toxic Drug Test*. 2012; 143–166.
  96. Tallarida RJ, Kimmel HL, Holtzman SG. Theory and statistics of detecting synergism between two active drugs: cocaine and buprenorphine. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 1997;133: 378–382.
  97. Tallarida RJ. The interaction index: A measure of drug synergism. *Pain*. 2002;98: 163–168.
  98. Berenbaum MC. What is synergy? *Pharmacol Rev*. 1989;41.
  99. Ng R. History of Drug Discovery and Development. Second. *Drugs: From Discovery to Approval*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc; 2009.
  100. Cragg GM, Newman DJ. Natural product drug discovery in the next millennium. *Pharm Biol*. 2001;39 Suppl 1: 8–17.

101. Drews J. Drug Discovery: A Historical Perspective. *Science* (80- ). 2000;287: 1960–1964.
102. Björn I, Bäckström T. Drug related negative side-effects is a common reason for poor compliance in hormone replacement therapy. *Maturitas*. 1999;32: 77–86.
103. Cordell G a. Natural products in drug discovery - Creating a new vision. *Phytochem Rev*. 2002;1: 261–273.
104. Gottesman MM. Mechanisms of cancer drug resistance. *Annu Rev Med*. 2002;53: 615–627.
105. Seguin L, Desgrosellier JS, Weis SM, Cheresch DA. Integrins and cancer: regulators of cancer stemness, metastasis, and drug resistance. *Trends Cell Biol*. 2015;25: 234–240.
106. Holohan C, Van Schaeybroeck S, Longley DB, Johnston PG. Cancer drug resistance: an evolving paradigm. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2013;13: 714–726.
107. Vertuani S, Angusti A, Manfredini S. The Antioxidants and Pro - Antioxidants Network : An Overview. *Curr Pharm Des*. 2004;10: 1677–1694.
108. Möttönen T, Hannonen P, Leirisalo-Repo M, Nissilä M, Kautiainen H, Korpela M, *et al*. Comparison of combination therapy with single-drug therapy in early rheumatoid arthritis: a randomised trial. *Lancet*. Elsevier; 1999;353: 1568–1573.
109. Kumar R, Verma V, Jain A, Jain RK, Maikhuri JP, Gupta G. Synergistic chemoprotective mechanisms of dietary phytoestrogens in a select combination against prostate cancer. *J Nutr Biochem*. 2011;22: 723–31.
110. Prabhakar PK, Kumar A, Doble M. Combination therapy: a new strategy to manage diabetes and its complications. *Phytomedicine*. 2014;21: 123–30.
111. Bedell S, Nachtigall M, Naftolin F. The pros and cons of plant estrogens for menopause. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;139: 225–236.
112. Jachak SM, Saklani A. Challenges and opportunities in drug discovery from plants. *Curr Sci*. 2007;92: 1251–1257.
113. Joubert E, de Beer D, Hernández I, Munné-Bosch S. Accumulation of mangiferin, isomangiferin, iriflophenone-3-C- $\beta$ -glucoside and hesperidin in honeybush leaves (*Cyclopia genistoides* Vent.) in response to harvest time, harvest interval and seed source. *Industrial Crops and Products*. 2014. pp. 74–82.
114. de Beer D, Joubert E. Development of HPLC method for *Cyclopia subternata* phenolic compound analysis and application to other *Cyclopia* spp. *J Food Compos Anal*. Elsevier Inc.; 2010;23: 289–297.
115. Kamara BI, Brandt EV, Ferreira D, Joubert E. Polyphenols from Honeybush Tea

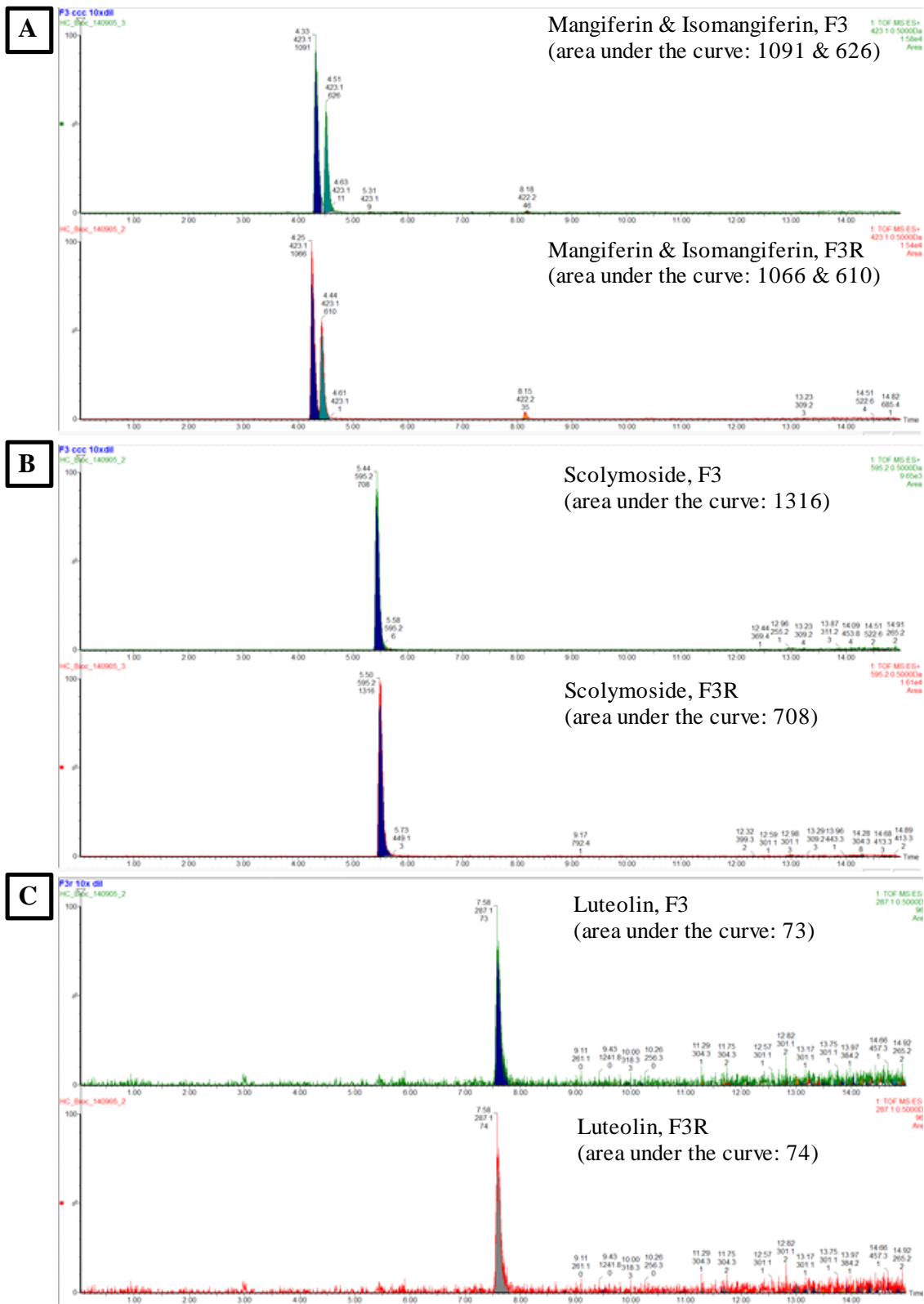
- (*Cyclopia intermedia*). J Agric Food Chem. 2003;51: 3874–3879.
116. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Sowinski P, Glod D, Gorynski K, Bucinski A. Isolation and structure elucidation of phenolic compounds from *Cyclopia subternata* Vogel (honeybush) intact plant and *in vitro* cultures. Food Chem. Elsevier Ltd; 2012;133: 1373–1382.
  117. Wei X, Liang D, Ning M, Wang Q, Meng X, Li Z. Semi-synthesis of neomangiferin from mangiferin. Tetrahedron Lett. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;55: 3083–3086.
  118. Xu L, Li A, Sun A, Liu R. Preparative isolation of neomangiferin and mangiferin from *Rhizoma anemarrhenae* by high-speed countercurrent chromatography using ionic liquids as a two-phase solvent system modifier. J Sep Sci. 2010;33: 31–36.
  119. Kumar KA, Ilango K. Structural Elucidation of Possible Metabolic Profile of Mangiferin by Oral and Intraperitoneal Administration. 2015; 1–7.
  120. Sanugul K, Akao T, Li Y, Kakiuchi N, Nakamura N, Hattori M. Isolation of a human intestinal bacterium that transforms mangiferin to norathyriol and inducibility of the enzyme that cleaves a C-glucosyl bond. Biol Pharm Bull. 2005;28: 1672–1678.
  121. Tatullo M, Marrelli M, Falisi G, Rastelli C, Palmieri F, Gargari M, *et al.* Mechanical influence of tissue culture plates and extracellular matrix on mesenchymal stem cell behavior: A topical review. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol. SAGE Publications; 2016;29: 3–8.
  122. Tiwari BK, Brunton NP, Brennan C. Handbook of Plant Food Phytochemicals: Sources, Stability and Extraction. Brijesh K. Tiwari, Nigel P. Brunton CB, editor. John Wiley & Sons; 2013.
  123. Robbins RJ. Phenolic acids in foods: An overview of analytical methodology. J Agric Food Chem. 2003;51: 2866–2887.
  124. Chethan S, Malleshi N. Finger millet polyphenols: Optimization of extraction and the effect of pH on their stability. Food Chem. 2007;105: 862–870.
  125. Lemańska K, Szymusiak H, Tyrakowska B, Zieliński R, Soffers AEM., Rietjens IMC. The influence of pH on antioxidant properties and the mechanism of antioxidant action of hydroxyflavones. Free Radic Biol Med. 2001;31: 869–881.
  126. Lafay S, Gil-Izquierdo A. Bioavailability of phenolic acids. Phytochemistry Reviews. 2008. pp. 301–311.
  127. Mfenyana C. Selective extraction of *Cyclopia* for enhanced *in vitro* phytoestrogenicity. Masters dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2008.
  128. Protocol for *In vitro* Estrogen Receptor (ER) Binding Assay Using the CER1 Human Recombinant ER $\alpha$  Ligand Binding Domain Protein. OECD; 2014. p. 64.

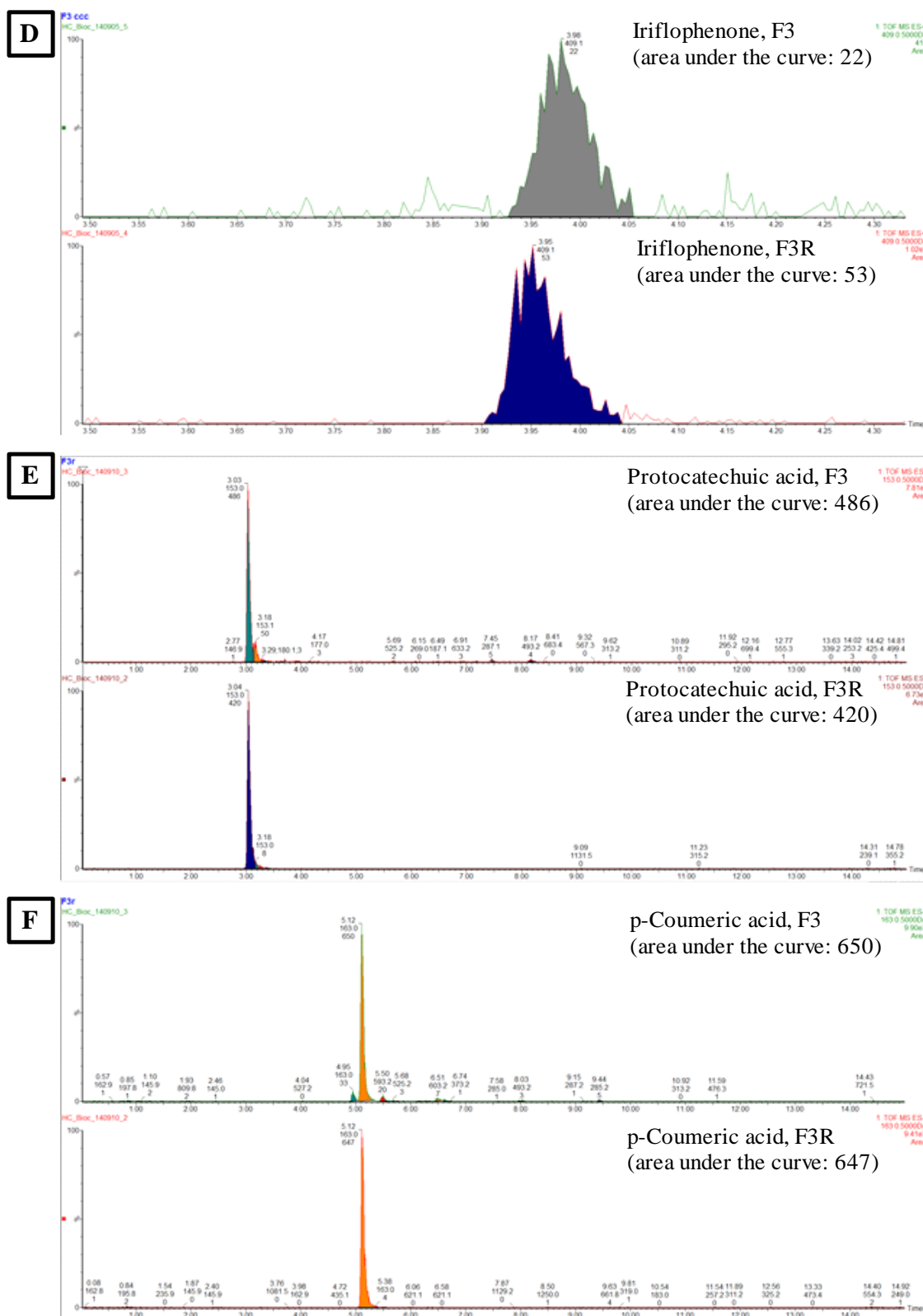
## 5.5. Supplementary Data



**Figure S.1: LC-ESI-MS chromatogram of F3 (A) and F3R (1x) (B) in positive ion mode.** Comparing peaks of phenolic content in F3 and F3R (1x). F3R (1x) was reconstituted using 5 major phenolic compounds: mangiferin (2), isomangiferin (3), scolymoside (4), *p*-coumaric acid (elutes with other compounds) & protocatechuic acid, and 2 minor phenolic compounds: iriflophenone-3-*C*-glc (1) & luteolin (5).

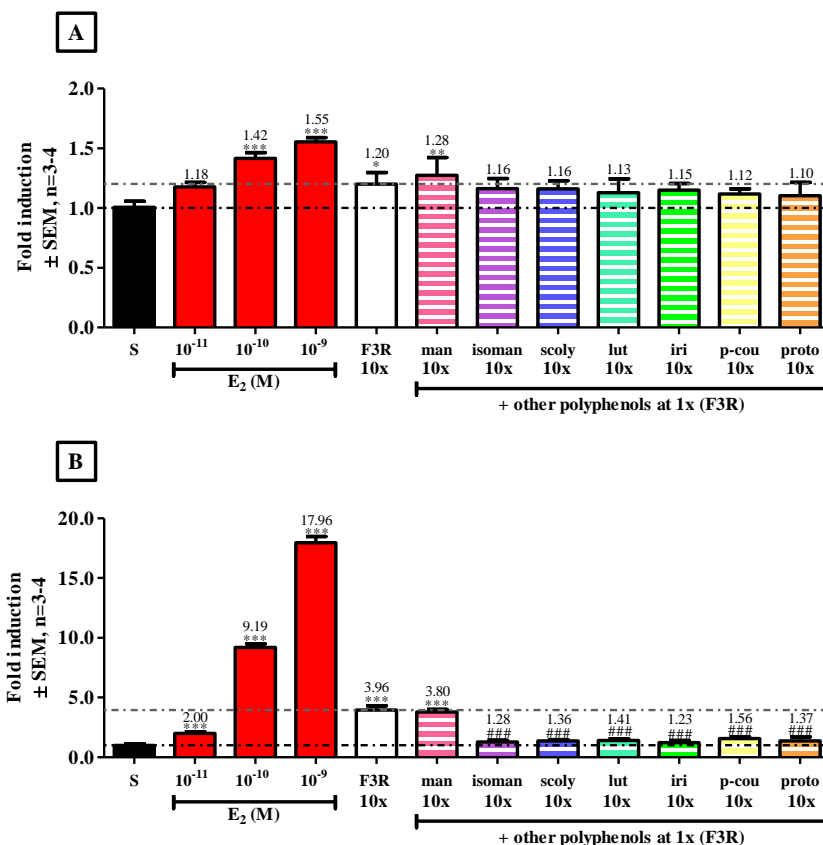




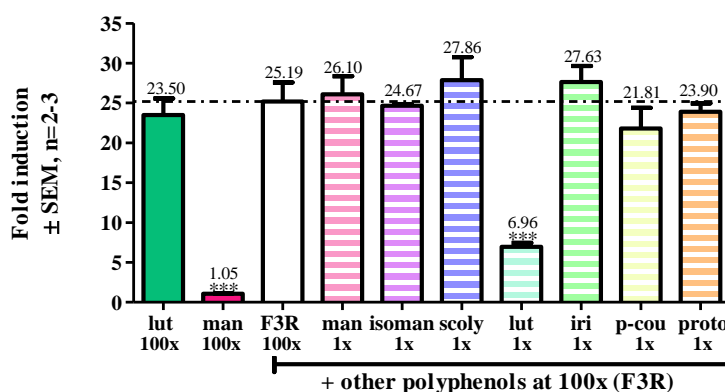


**Figure S.2:** LC-ESI-MS chromatogram of F3 (top) and F3R (1x) (bottom) in positive/negative ion mode. Comparing peaks of individual phenolic compounds in F3 and F3R: (A) mangiferin & isomangiferin, (B) scolymoside \*\*, (C) luteolin, (D) iriflophenone-3-C-glc<sup>§</sup>, (E) protocatechuic acid & (F) *p*-coumaric acid.

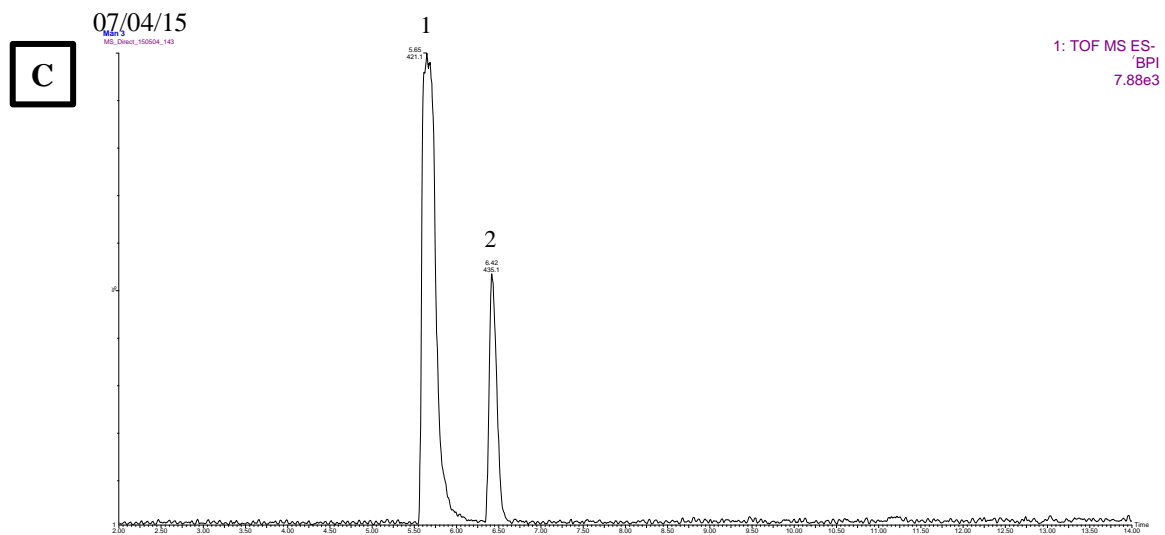
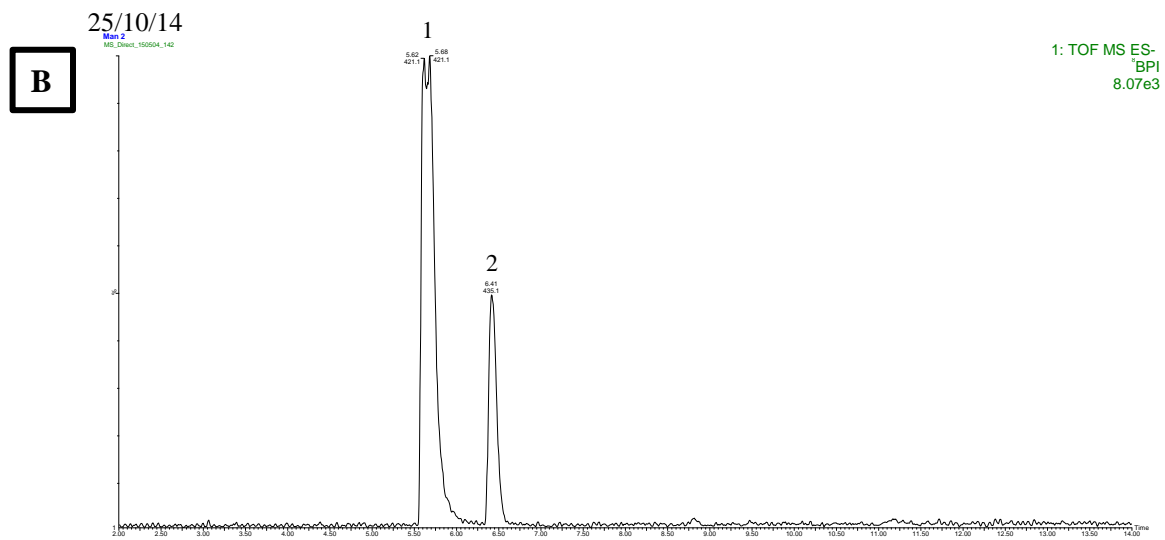
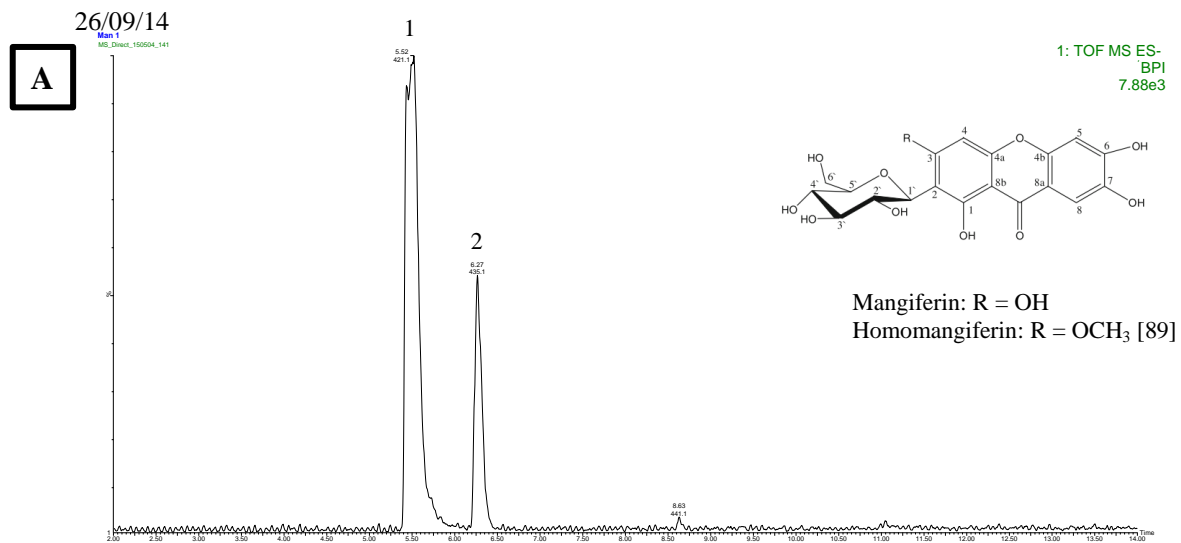
\*\* The concentrations of the phenolic compounds were previously determined by Mortimer *et al.* [33][39], however, at the time there were no authentic standards for scolymoside and iriflophenone-3-C-glc, and these compounds were quantified relative to luteolin and iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside (isolated from *Cyclopia genistoides*), respectively.

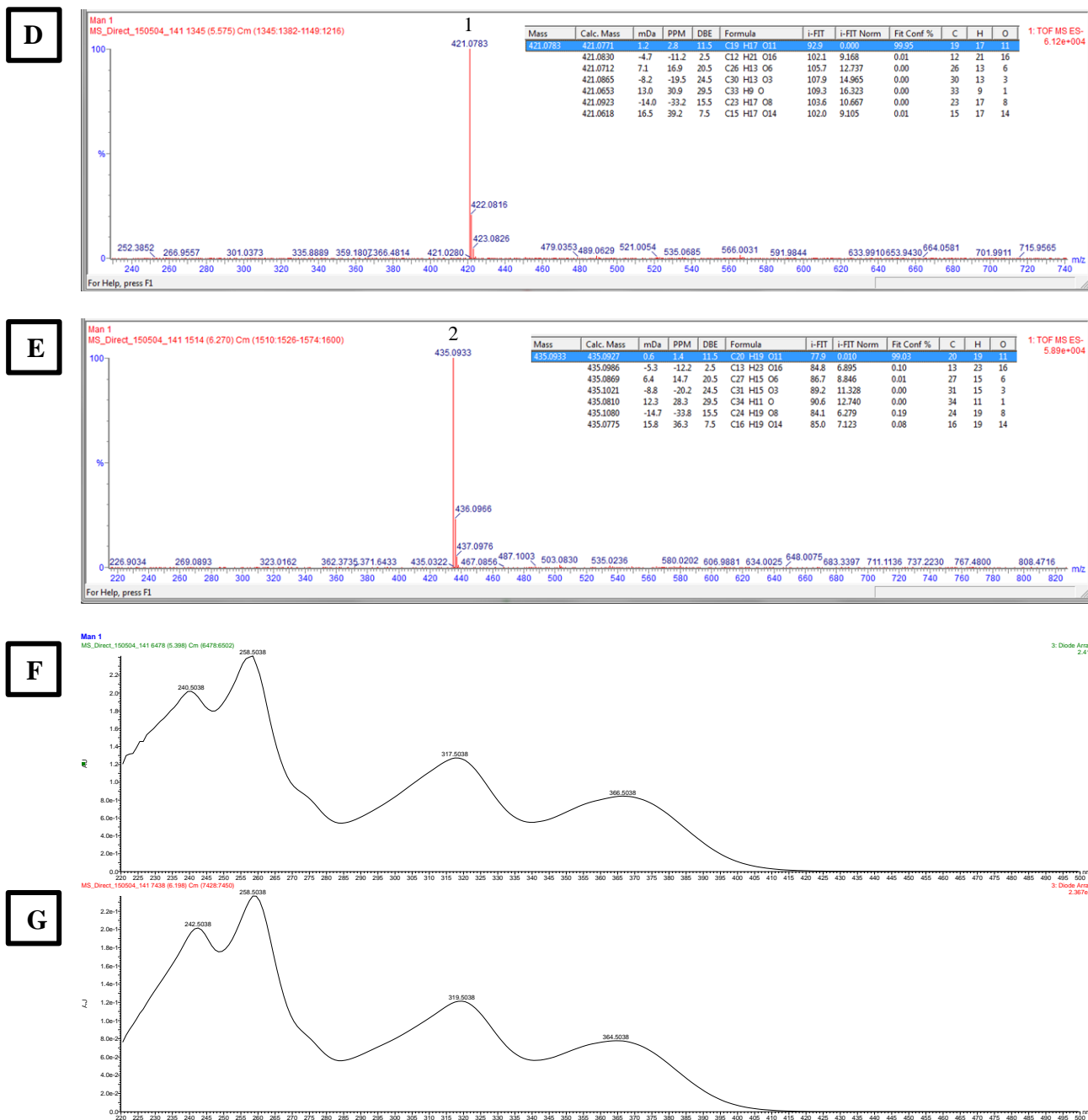


**Figure S.3: Promoter reporter studies comparing the activity of F3R (10x) to the newly reconstructed 10x fractions, via ER $\alpha$  (A) and ER $\beta$  (B) transactivation in agonist mode.** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\alpha$ /pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with E<sub>2</sub> ( $10^{-11}$  –  $10^{-9}$  M), F3R (10x), F3R mangiferin 10x, F3R isomangiferin 10x, F3R scolymoside 10x, F3R luteolin 10x, F3R iriflophenone-3-C-glucoside 10x, F3R *p*-coumaric acid 10x and F3R protocatechuic acid 10x. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett’s Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to solvent control set to 1 (black bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001, or newly reconstituted 10x fractions compared to F3R (10x), #P<0.05, ##P<0.01, ###P<0.001.



**Figure S.4: Promoter reporter studies investigating the effect of subtraction of phenolic compounds from F3R (100x) via ER $\beta$  transactivation in agonist mode:** HEK293 cells were transfected with pSG5-hER $\beta$ , ERE.PS2.luc and a pGL2 basic empty vector, and induced with luteolin (100x), F3R (100x) and subtracted F3R (100x)’s, which consist of 6 phenolic compounds at 100x their concentration and one compound at 1x its concentration, respectively. Statistical analysis: One-way ANOVA with Dunnett’s Multiple Comparisons Test as post-test, all columns compared to F3R (100x) (white bar), \*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, \*\*\*P<0.001.





**Figure S.5:** LC-ESI-MS chromatogram in negative ion mode (A - C), TOFMS spectra (D & E) and UV spectra (F & G) of mangiferin analytical standard stocks. Mangiferin stocks were labelled according to receiving date: (A) 26/09/14, (B) 25/10/14 & (C - G) 07/04/15, and both mangiferin (1) and homomangiferin (2) were detected in all the mangiferin stocks tested. TOFMS analysis of mangiferin stock (07/04/15) validates the presence of both (D) mangiferin (Mr 422,33g/mol, C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>18</sub>O<sub>11</sub>) and (E) homomangiferin (Mr 436,37g/mol, C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>20</sub>O<sub>11</sub>). UV-visible absorption data of (F) mangiferin and (G) homomangiferin correspond with findings from Qin *et al.* [89].

**Mangiferin**

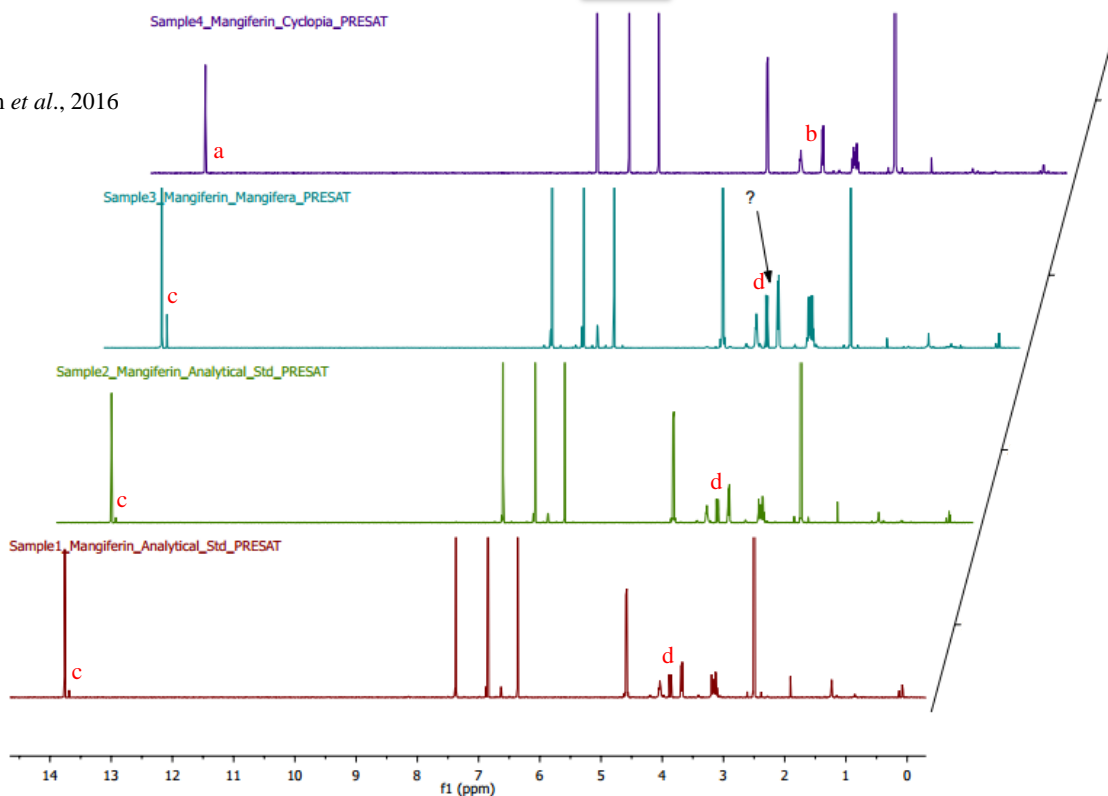
**A**

(1) Gelderblom *et al.*, 2016

(2) 16/06/15\*

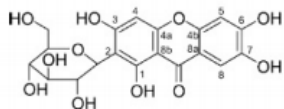
(3) 16/06/15

(4) 07/04/15



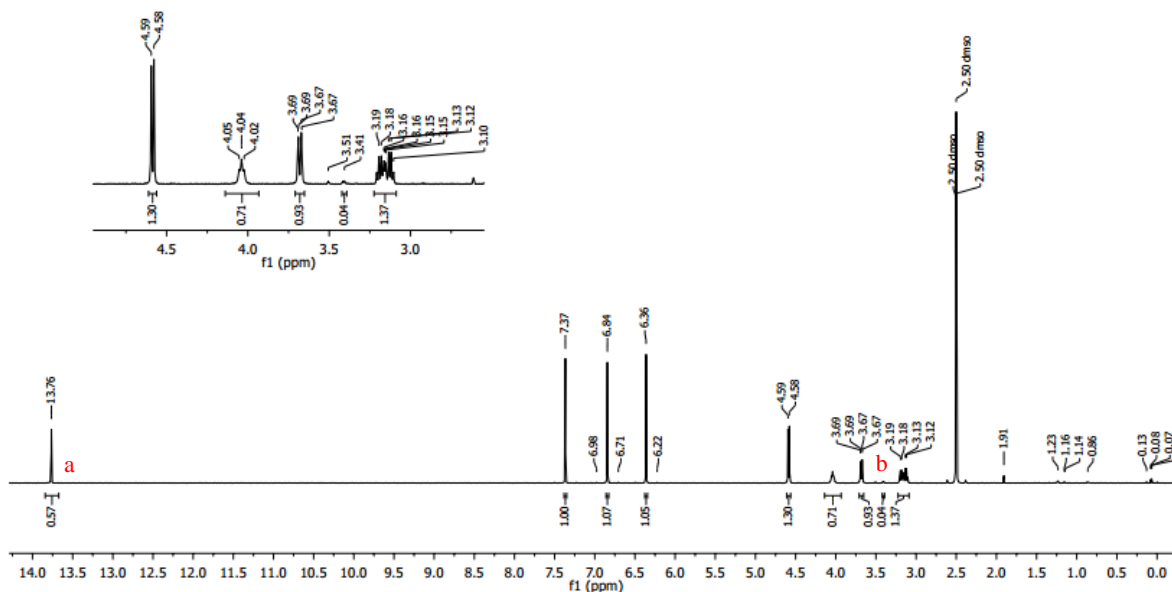
**B**

Sample4\_Mangiferin\_Cyclopa\_PRESAT



Mangiferin: ESI-MS m/z: 421 (M-H)<sup>-</sup>; negative ion mode. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 400 MHz): d 13.77 (1H, s, 1-OH), 7.37 (1H, s, H-8), 6.85 (1H, s, H-5), 6.37 (1H, s, H-4), 4.58 (1H, d, J = 9.8 Hz, H-1'), 4.04 (1H, t-like, J = 9.0 Hz, H-2'), 3.68 (1H, d, J = 11.3 Hz, H-6'a), 3.41 (1H, dd, J = 11.3, 5.7 Hz, H-6'b) 3.20 (1H, m, H-3'), 3.16 (1H, m, H-5'), 3.14 (1H, m, H-4').

(1) Gelderblom *et al.*, 2016

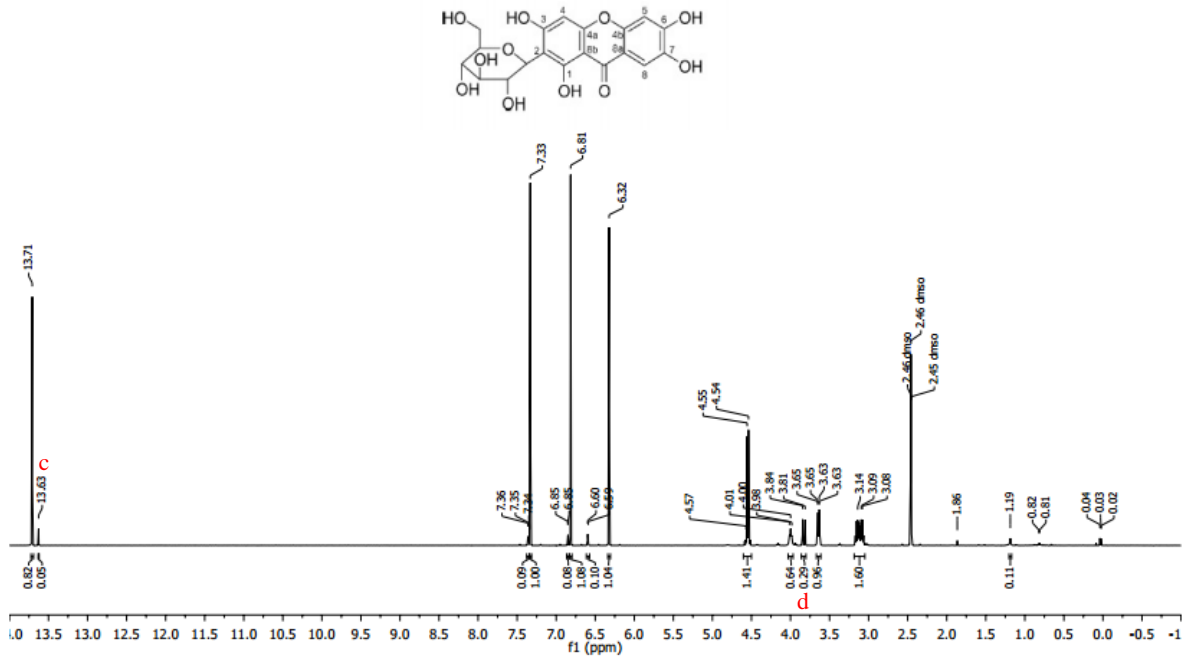


**C**

Sample3\_Mangiferin\_Mangifera\_PRESAT

Mangiferin: ESI-MS m/z: 421 (M-H)<sup>2-</sup>; negative ion mode. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 400 MHz): d 13.77 (1H, s, 1-OH), 7.37 (1H, s, H-8), 6.85 (1H, s, H-5), 6.37 (1H, s, H-4), 4.58 (1H, d, J = 9.8 Hz, H-1'), 4.04 (1H, t-like, J = 9.0 Hz, H-2'), 3.68 (1H, d, J = 11.3 Hz, H-6'a), 3.41 (1H, dd, J = 11.3, 5.7 Hz, H-6'b) 3.20 (1H, m, H-3'), 3.16 (1H, m, H-5'), 3.14 (1H, m, H-4').

(2) 16/06/15\*

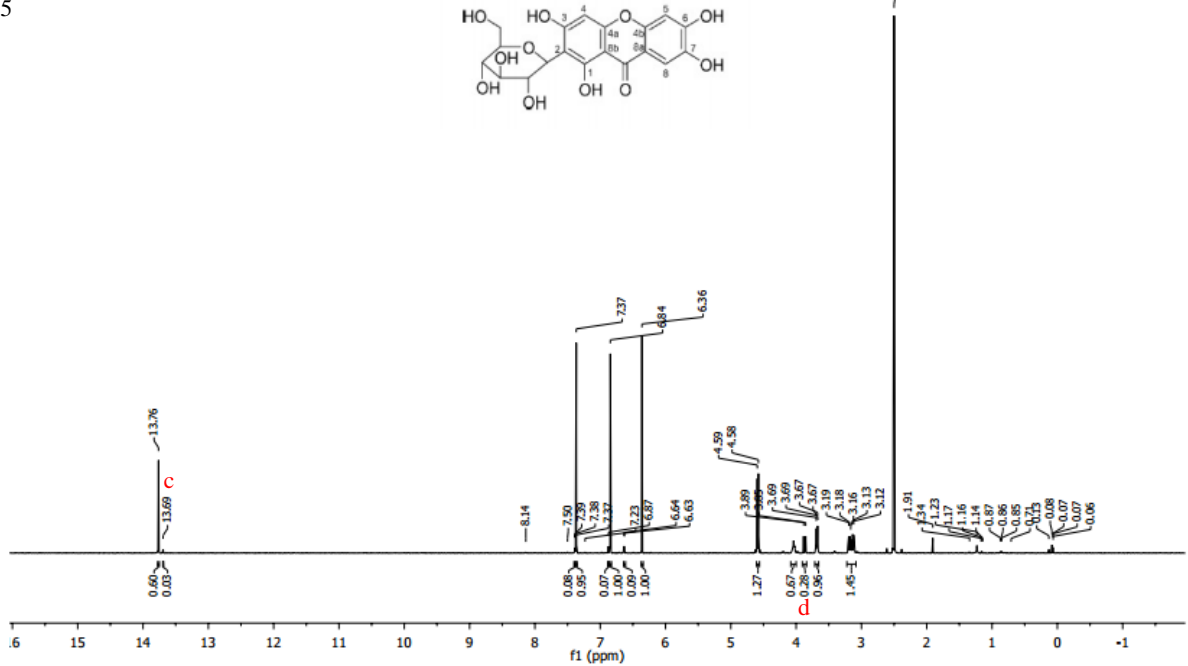


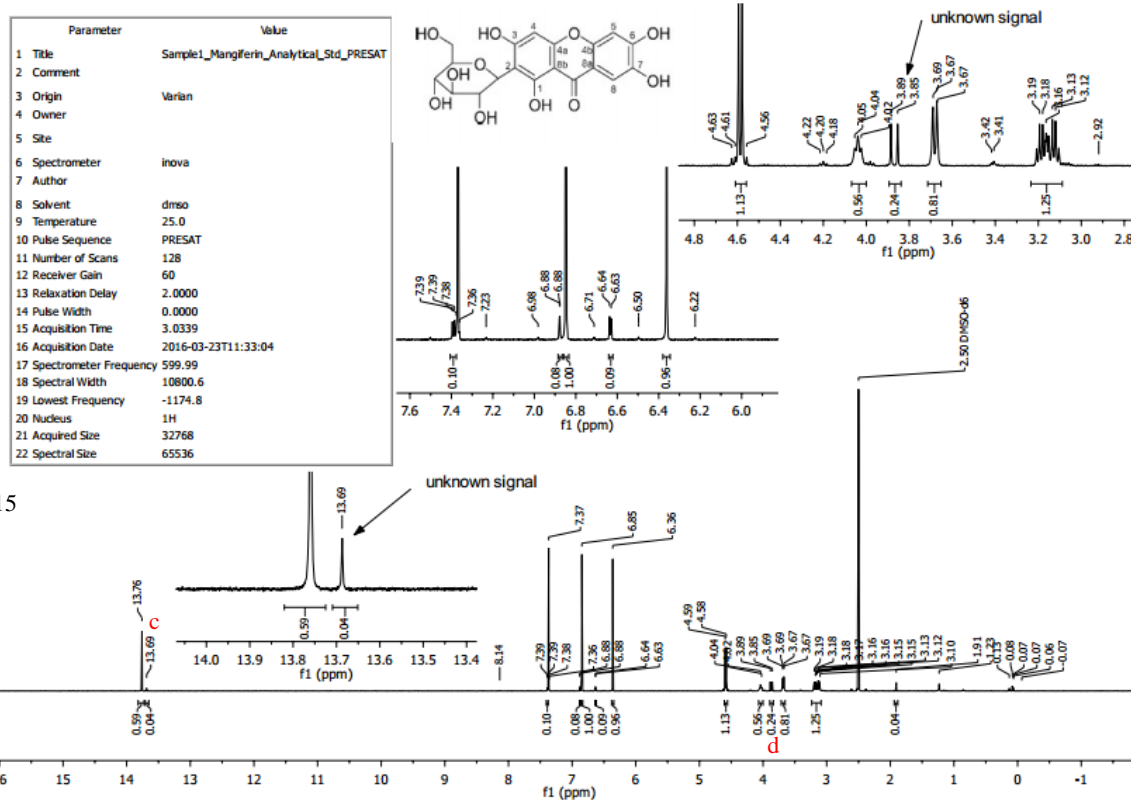
Sample2\_Mangiferin\_Analytical\_Std\_PRESAT

Mangiferin: ESI-MS m/z: 421 (M-H)<sup>2-</sup>; negative ion mode. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 400 MHz): d 13.77 (1H, s, 1-OH), 7.37 (1H, s, H-8), 6.85 (1H, s, H-5), 6.37 (1H, s, H-4), 4.58 (1H, d, J = 9.8 Hz, H-1'), 4.04 (1H, t-like, J = 9.0 Hz, H-2'), 3.68 (1H, d, J = 11.3 Hz, H-6'a), 3.41 (1H, dd, J = 11.3, 5.7 Hz, H-6'b) 3.20 (1H, m, H-3'), 3.16 (1H, m, H-5'), 3.14 (1H, m, H-4').

**D**

(3) 16/06/15



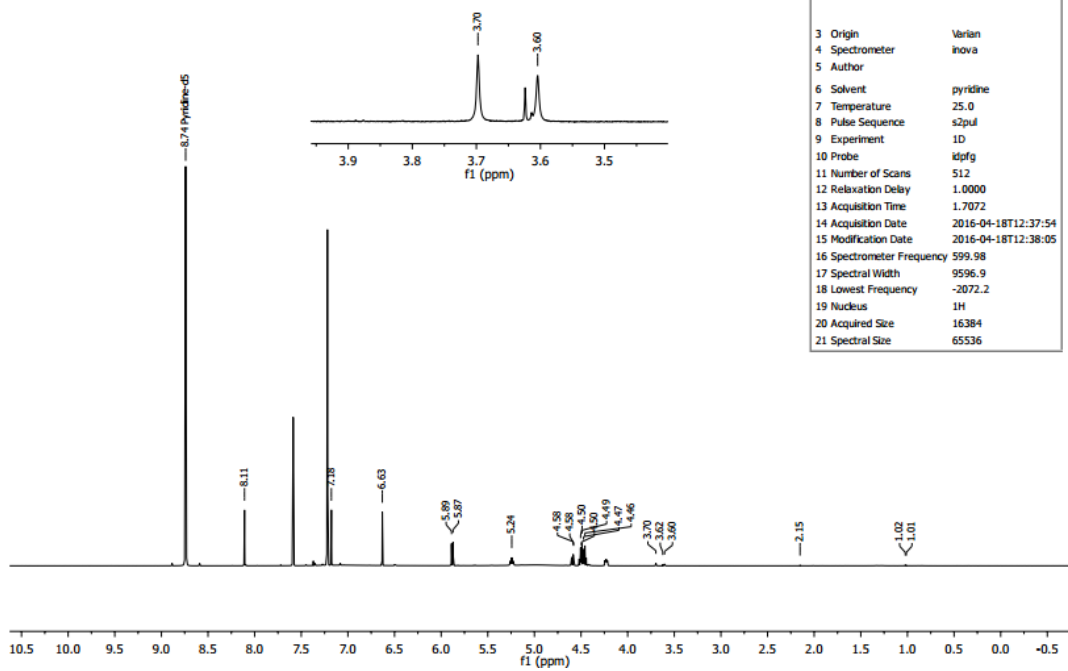
**E**

**Figure S.6: 400 MHz  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  spectra (25 °C, DMSO- $d_6$ ) of mangiferin stocks. (A)** NMR spectra of different stocks of mangiferin labelled according to receiving date: **(1)** Geldeblom *et al.*, 2016, **(2)** 16/06/15, **(3)** 16/06/15\*, and **(4)** 07/04/15. Unknown signals detected at **(c)** 13.69 ppm and **(d)** 3.87ppm in samples 2 - 4. **(B)** Sample 1: mangiferin isolated and purified from *Cyclopia* by Gelderblom *et al.*, 2016 (unpublished). No signals observed at position **(a)** 13.69 ppm and **(b)** 3.87ppm in sample 1. **(C)** Sample 2: mangiferin from *Mangifera indica* (16/6/15)\*. **(D)** Sample 3: mangiferin analytical standard (16/6/15). **(E)** Sample 4: mangiferin analytical standard (7/4/15). Unknown signals were subsequently identified as an OH **(c)** and OMe **(d)** signal from homomangiferin.

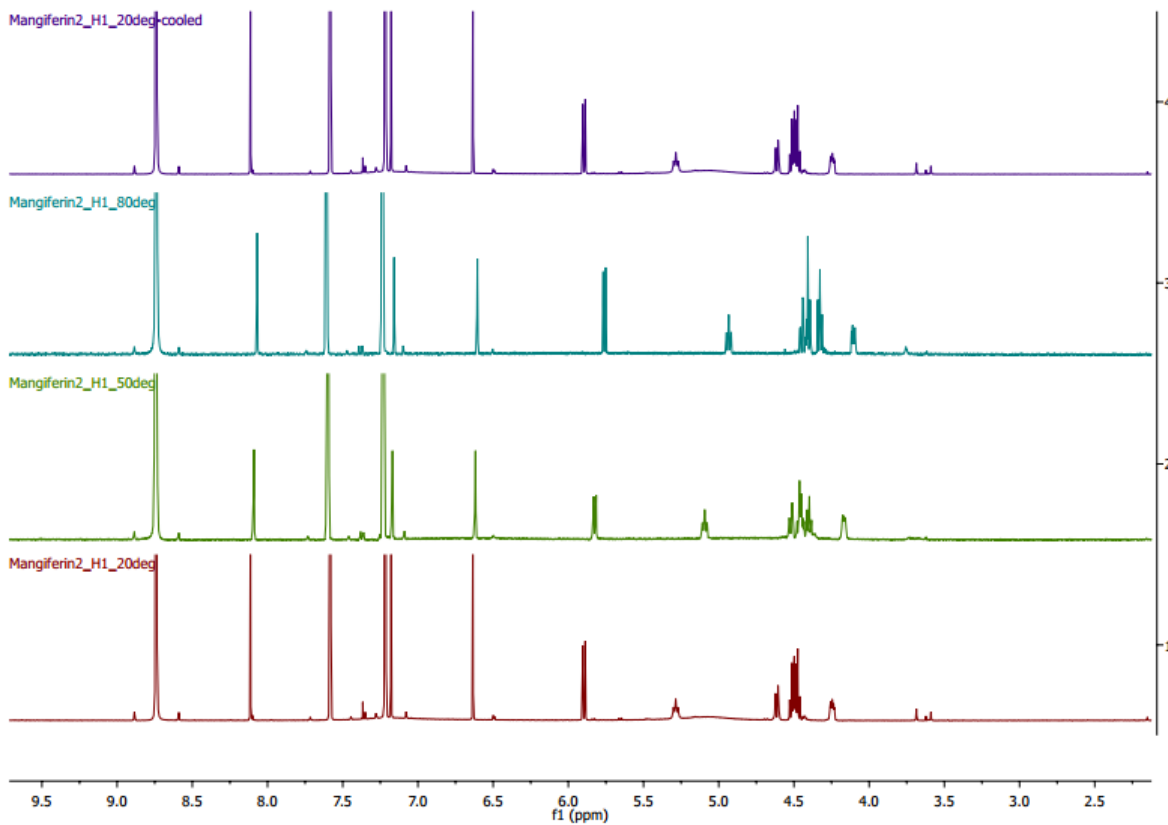


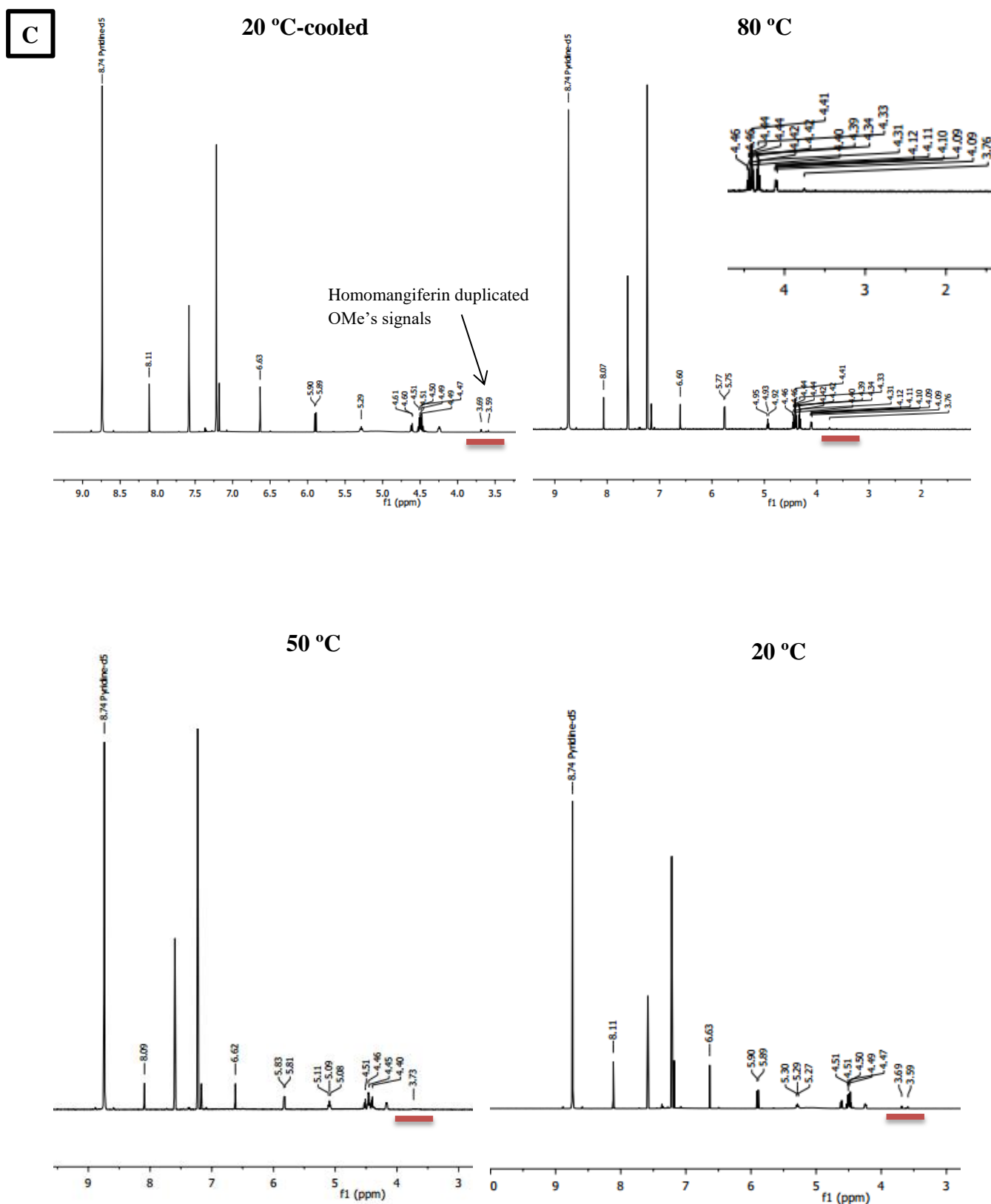
Mangiferin analytical standard (3) 16/06/15

A



B





**Figure S.7:** 400 MHz  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR spectra (pyridine- $d_5$ ) of homomangiferin. (A) NMR spectra of homomangiferin in sample 3, mangiferin analytical standard (16/6/15). Signals detected at 3.7 ppm and 3.6 ppm was identical to the methoxyl (OMe) chemical shift found in Wu *et al.* [88]. (B) NMR temperature ramp of sample 2 at 80, 50 & 20°C. (C) Temperature ramp shows coalescence of duplicated OMe signals (3.7 & 3.6 ppm) at 80 °C, confirming the presence of homomangiferin.

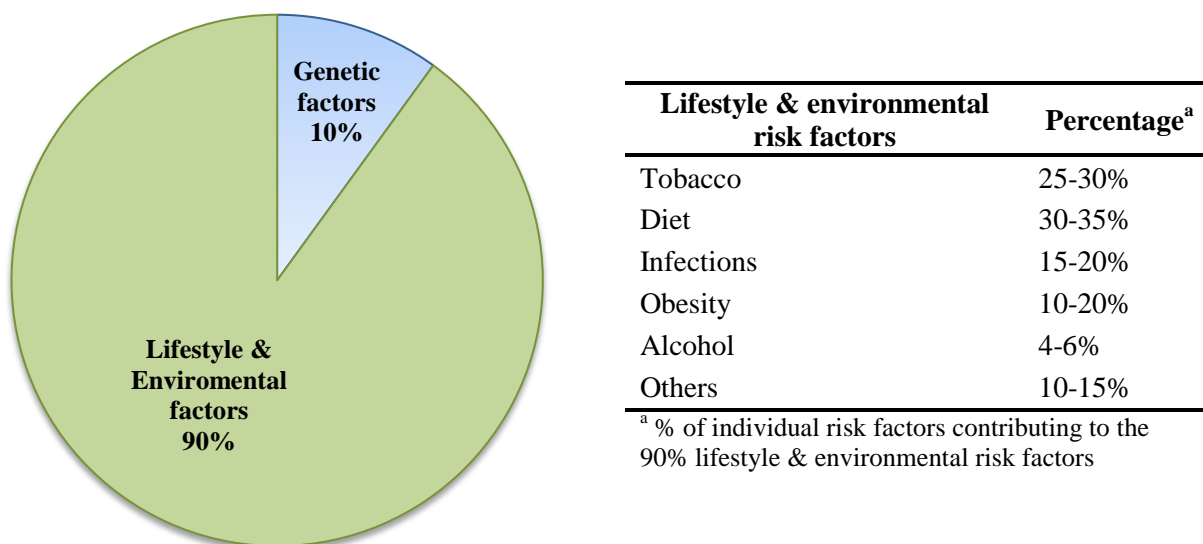
## **Chapter 6: Final Discussion and Conclusion**

Cancer is a multifaceted disease characterised by abnormal and uncontrolled cell growth and division due to genomic mutations, which results in ineffective cellular repair and/or delayed apoptosis of defaulted cells [1,2]. Cancer accounts for approximately 13% of all deaths worldwide, and has a socio-economic impact on both developed and developing countries [2–11]. Despite considerable progress made in cancer research (understanding cancer biology, identifying risk factors, early detection, accurate diagnosis and improved or novel therapies), there are still various limitations such as drug resistance, toxicity, and high costs associated with cancer therapies, with no definite cure for this disease [9,12,13]. The fight against cancer is complicated by the fragility of cells and the complex molecular network they form part of [14–16]. Furthermore, each cancer is unique to the host as a result of genetic and epigenetic changes caused by lifestyle and environmental factors [1,17–20].

There are various risk factors that contribute to cancer incidence and mortality. Interestingly, only 10% of these risk factors are due to inherited genetic defects, whereas 90% of cancer-causing risk factors are lifestyle choices and environmental factors (Figure 6.1), including but not limited to tobacco smoking, alcohol consumption, diet low in nutrients, obesity, environmental pollution, oncogenic viruses, and exposure to UV, radiation and/or carcinogenic compounds [9,16,17,21–25]. Therefore, 30-40% of most cancer types can be prevented with a healthy lifestyle and dietary modifications [23–29]. Various epidemiological studies have linked diets high in plant based foods\*, which are rich in dietary fibre, vitamins, minerals, antioxidants and phenolic compounds, to disease prevention and improved health [27–38].

---

\* Plant based foods include fruit, vegetables, whole grains, nuts, legumes and herbs [30,31,38].



**Figure 6.1: Cancer-related risk factors as adapted from Anand *et al.*, [23].**

In addition to using plants as a source of health promoting macro–and micronutrients, various cultures and societies are also dependant on plants for medicinal purposes [38–42]. Some of the poorer or lower–income countries lack proper health care systems, medical facilities and pharmaceutical manufacturing capacity to provide safe and affordable medical care [43–45]. Consequently, the native communities rely predominantly on alternative phytomedicine and traditional practices [40,42,46–48]. It has been estimated that 70-80% of African countries use some form of traditional or complementary/alternative medicine (CAM)<sup>†</sup>, either as primary source of treatment or to alleviate side effects associated with some conventional therapies, such as in the case of HIV/AIDS treatments [43,49,50].

Various pharmaceutical and nutraceutical products come from medicinal plants and plant extracts. Generally, the plants are selected for specific favourable properties and the main active compounds are isolated, characterised and synthesized for target specific drug therapies [39,51,52]. Examples of such pharmaceutical drugs originating from plant sources

<sup>†</sup> Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) is a term used for medicinal products or practices that are not part of conventional medicine, but are often used together with (complementary) or instead of (alternative) conventional medicine [124].

include: aspirin (*Filipendula ulmaria*), codeine and morphine (*Papaver somniferum*), which are used as analgesics, artemisinin (*Artemisia annua*), which is used as an anti-malaria drug, and galantamine (*Galanthus nivalis*), which is used for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease [41,53–56]. Although single well-characterised active compounds work effectively in treating particular diseases, they show less effectiveness in the treatment of multifaceted diseases, such as cancer, and in some case result in drug resistance [57,58].

Whole plant extracts and combination phytotherapies, on the other hand, consist of multiple constituents (active and supporting) and can therefore display multiple actions [59]. In the plant, the mixture of different phytochemicals works together in a combinatorial or synergistic manner to create a supporting environment for the active compounds, as well as enhancing their bioactivity [31,59–62]. Furthermore, plant extracts have the potential to interact with multiple biological targets and systems, for example, *Salacia oblonga* extracts, which are used in Ayurvedic medicine for the prevention and treatment of type 2 diabetes, also displays anti-proliferative activity in MCA-MB-231 breast cancer cells [59,63–65]. In addition, within each biological system the phytochemicals may direct their activity at various intracellular targets and intervene with different cell signalling processes [63,66,67]. This multi-target action of medicinal plants and their extracts provides renewed insight into combatting complex diseases and could perhaps supply an intelligent drug mixture able to combat cancer on multiple levels [62,68]. However, much is yet to be learned about the complex networks and synergistic interactions within plant extracts.

Our research group focus specifically on breast cancer, the most common diagnosed cancer amongst women [69–71]. Genetic factors account for 5-10% of all breast cancer cases with mutations in genes such as BRCA1, BRCA2, P53, ATM, PTEN/MMAC1 and LKB1 resulting in greater genetic susceptibility for breast cancer [72–75]. Other risk factors associated with breast cancer include alcohol consumption, obesity, diet, and exposure to

radiation, in addition to hormone related risk factors (early menarche, the use of hormone contraceptives, late pregnancy of first child, and late menopause), which increases the risk of estrogen receptor (ER) positive breast cancer, the most common type of breast cancer [9,22,23,26,69,73,76].

Estrogens (endogenous and exogenous) are the main driving force behind ER positive breast cancer, however, estrogens also play a vital role in the development and function of the female reproductive system as well as in bone maintenance, cardiovascular protection and cognitive functioning [77–82]. Therefore, the use of exogenous estrogens, as in the case of menopausal hormone replacement therapy, provides both a protective role (prevention of osteoporosis, cardiovascular diseases and mental diseases) and a harmful role (increased risk of estrogen related cancers, such as breast cancer), thus creating a double edged sword scenario where woman are at risk for one group of diseases if they do not take hormone replacement therapy, and at risk for another group of diseases if they do [77–85]. For this reason, women are seeking alternative forms of hormone therapies and are turning to plant extracts high in phytoestrogens, since they are deemed as safer and more natural sources of estrogens [86–90]. These plant extracts should, however, still be used with caution, since the combination of all the different constituents, including the phytoestrogens, are not as well studied as conventional hormone therapies [91].

The goal of our research group is to develop a potential nutraceutical that reduces menopausal symptoms and related diseases, while decreasing the risk of developing estrogen related cancers, specifically breast cancer. One plant of particular interest for us regarding possible novel nutraceutical or pharmaceutical development is *Cyclopia*, an indigenous South African fynbos plant more commonly known as honeybush [92–95]. *Cyclopia* contains high levels of phenolic compounds and has, in various studies, displayed phytoestrogenic, anti-

diabetic, anti-inflammatory and anti-mutagenic activity [94–100]. Unlocking the pharmaceutical potential of *Cyclopia* could also be beneficial to South Africa's economy.

The sequential methanol extract from *Cyclopia subternata* (SM6Met) has shown promising *in vitro* and *in vivo* results in different breast cancer experimental systems and models [100–102]. The desired estrogenic characteristics of this extract include ER $\alpha$  antagonism and ER $\beta$  agonism (which is important in ER positive breast cancer therapies since ER $\alpha$  is known to induce cell proliferation, whereas ER $\beta$  has shown to antagonise ER $\alpha$  mediated activity), and inhibition of E<sub>2</sub>-induced breast cancer cell proliferation [100–106]. To evaluate the multi-target potential of SM6Met, Mortimer *et al.* fractionated the extract and found that the phenolic content as well as favourable estrogenic profile of SM6Met was divided between the three fractions, with F1 and F2 displaying ER $\alpha$  antagonism and F3 displaying robust ER $\beta$  agonism, thus reaffirming the importance of the whole extract [107]. Mortimer also identified some of the phenolic compounds in the different fractions, however, the combinatorial or possible synergistic activity of all the different phytochemicals has never before been investigated. The current study continued on from Mortimer's work, and as a starting point, focused specifically on F3 and the 7 major phenolic compounds quantified in this fraction from amongst the 15 phenolic compounds identified by Mortimer *et al.* [107].

The first aim of the current study was to establish an experimental system sensitive enough to detect small drug induced changes. Following on from Mortimer's study, the same *in vitro* experimental systems were used (promoter reporter assay using HEK 293 cells and proliferation assay using MCF-7 BUS cells). Various factors were investigated including cell types, the ER subtypes combined with different ERE promoter reporter constructs, and the optimisation of the experimental procedures, after which it was established that the promoter reporter assay (post-optimisation), is a more sensitive experimental system to test phytochemical interactions. Specifically, optimisation resulted in a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) 9-



fold increase in the efficacy of E<sub>2</sub> via ER $\beta$ , with no significant increase via ER $\alpha$ . Despite the difference in efficacy between ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , the increase in sensitivity via ER $\beta$  is a more desired outcome since F3 is characterised as a robust ER $\beta$  agonist.

The second aim entailed the reconstitution of F3 (F3R) using the 7 major phenolic compounds (mangiferin, isomangiferin, scolymoside, luteolin, iriflophenone, *p*-coumeric acid and protocatechuic acid)<sup>‡</sup> as identified and quantified by Mortimer *et al.* [107], to investigate their contribution to the robust ER $\beta$  activity of F3. Interestingly, F3R displayed no significant estrogenic activity with the 7 major phenolic compounds at 1-fold their concentration in F3. Possible reasons for the lack of estrogenic activity could be that the excluded phenolic compounds in F3 (alone or combined) are responsible for F3's estrogenic activity, or that they create a supporting environment for the active compounds to elicit a response. However, when F3R was reconstituted at 100-fold (F3R (100x)) its concentration, a significant (P<0.001) increase in activity was observed via both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , indicating that some of the phenolic compounds in F3R do possess estrogenic activity. It was initially thought that luteolin was the cause of the increase in estrogenic activity observed with F3R (100x), since, at this stage of the study, it was the only phenolic compound out of the 7 that had in previous studies displayed phytoestrogenic activity via both ER's [95,96,108–110].

The next step (Aim 3) was to investigate the estrogenic activity of the individual phenolic compounds in F3R, to establish which of the compounds are, in fact, the active estrogenic compounds. As expected, luteolin displayed estrogenic activity at increased concentrations via both ER $\alpha$  and ER $\beta$ , mangiferin, however, also displayed estrogenic activity at increased concentrations, via both ER subtypes. A detailed investigation of the estrogenic activity of these two estrogenic compounds, confirmed mangiferin and luteolin's ER mediated mode of action. To our knowledge, mangiferin's ER $\beta$  mediated activity is a novel finding, with

---

<sup>‡</sup> Phenolic compounds were purchased. See section 3.2.1.

literature only recently presenting ER $\alpha$  related activity in different experimental systems [111,112].

After establishing that mangiferin and luteolin were the only two estrogenic phenolic compounds in F3R, addition and subtraction studies (Aim 4) were conducted to investigate the supporting role of the 5 non-estrogenic phenolic compounds (in combination with the 2 estrogenic phenolic compounds) in the estrogenic activity of F3R (100x). This was necessitated as mangiferin and luteolin's individual estrogenic activity (at 100x their concentration in F3R) was still significantly lower than that of F3R (100x). In the addition studies, mangiferin and luteolin displayed interchangeable activity in F3R (100x) via ER $\beta$ , with no significant difference between F3R (100x) and the newly reconstructed fractions (F3R Man (100x), F3R Lut (100x) & F3R 100x (Man + Lut)). This further accentuates the importance of the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds in F3R (100x), and suggests that the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds, even at 1x their concentration in F3R, enhance the activity of the estrogenic phenolic compounds. Via ER $\alpha$ , these newly reconstructed fractions, however, displayed significantly lower activity compared to F3R (100x), indicating that one or more of the non-estrogenic phenolic compounds are needed, at 100x their concentration, in order to recreate F3R (100x)'s activity. Aim 4, however, could only be completed in part, since, with the subtraction studies, mangiferin lost its estrogenic activity and luteolin appeared to be the only contributing factor to the activity of F3R (100x). Consequently, the last aim could also not be completed and the combinatorial or possible synergism activity of the 7 major phenolic compounds could not be determined.

An additional investigation was conducted to determine the possible cause for the sudden loss of mangiferin's activity. Various mangiferin stocks were tested and no structural changes or degradation of the phenolic compound was detected via LC-MS and NMR studies, however, homomangiferin was detected in all the mangiferin stocks used for experimental work. Like

mangiferin, not much is known about homomangiferin's estrogenic mode of action. Another possible cause was speculated to be external factors such as pH, since pH drifting has been shown to be responsible for deprotonation of hydroxyl groups in phenolic compounds, including mangiferin [113–115]. Further investigation is, however, needed regarding the influence of pH drifting on F3R activity.

To summarise the findings from the current study, F3's robust ER $\beta$  agonist activity could not be recreated using only the 7 major phenolic compounds quantified in this fraction, and it is apparent that the minor phenolic compounds play a crucial role in the desired estrogenic profile of this fraction. Even though the major phenolic compounds showed no estrogenic activity (individual and combined) at their concentrations in F3 (F3R (1x)), their contribution to this fraction's activity, and subsequently the multi-target activity of SM6Met, should not be dismissed. In a review article by Gertsch [62], the author describes the possibility of weaker or non-active secondary metabolites in plant extracts to still exert an effect in the absence of the bioactive compounds due to biochemical synergism or network pharmacology. When F3 was reconstitution with the 7 major phenolic compounds at 100-fold their concentration in F3, a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) increase in activity was observed via both ER subtypes. Upon further investigation, it became clear that the two estrogenic phenolic compounds, mangiferin and luteolin, were not the only contributing factors to F3R (100x)'s robust estrogenic activity, and the non-estrogenic compounds potentially played a supporting role in the bioactivity of this fraction. Various studies have presented similar results where the isolated active phytochemicals showed less effectiveness or a decrease in bioactivity compared to the plant extract [62,68,116–119]. In addition, mangiferin's ER $\beta$  mediated activity was a novel finding, unfortunately, mangiferin lost this activity during the final stages of the current study. Future work should investigate the contribution of the minor phenolic compounds in F3 to the favourable attributes of this fraction, in order to establish which phytochemicals to target for the investigation of combinatorial or possible synergistic

interactions. *In silico* (computational) methods could also aid in identifying potential synergistic phytochemicals, by means of virtual screening of natural chemical libraries such as DrugBank, Asinex, ZINC databases, in combination with drug synergy software such as Compusyn and Combenefit [66,120–123].

Plants may provide us with future intelligent drug mixtures, with the possibility of overcoming the limitations of current therapies, however, a great deal is yet to be discovered regarding the complex interactions of phytochemicals. Like the game of Jenga, removing vital phytochemicals from the mixture creates instability, and eventually results in the collapse of the complex multi-target system.

## 6.1. References

1. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of Cancer: The Next Generation. *Cell*. 2011;144: 646–674.
2. WHO | Cancer [Internet]. WHO World Health Organization; 2016. Available: <http://www.who.int/cancer/en/>
3. Stratton MR, Campbell PJ, Futreal PA. The cancer genome. *Nature*. 2009;458: 719–724.
4. Stelling J, Sauer U, Szallasi Z, Doyle FJ, Doyle J. Robustness of Cellular Functions. *Cell*. 2004;118: 675–685.
5. Gentles AJ, Gallahan D. Systems Biology: Confronting the Complexity of Cancer. *Cancer Res*. 2011;71: 5961–5964.
6. Globocan. Estimated Cancer Incidence, Mortality and Prevalence Worldwide in 2012. In: International Agency for Research on Cancer [Internet]. World Health Organization; 2012. Available: [http://globocan.iarc.fr/Pages/fact\\_sheets\\_cancer.aspx](http://globocan.iarc.fr/Pages/fact_sheets_cancer.aspx)
7. Diederichs S, Gutschner T. The hallmarks of cancer A long non-coding RNA point of view. *RNA Biol*. 2012;96: 703–719.
8. Gordon L, Scuffham P, Hayes S, Newman B. Exploring the economic impact of breast cancers during the 18 months following diagnosis. *Psychooncology*. 2007;16: 1130–1139.

9. Danaei G, Vander Hoorn S, Lopez AD, Murray CJ, Ezzati M. Causes of cancer in the world: comparative risk assessment of nine behavioural and environmental risk factors. *Lancet*. 2005;366: 1784–1793.
10. Ezzati M, Lopez AD, Rodgers A, Vander Hoorn S, Murray CJ. Selected major risk factors and global and regional burden of disease. *Lancet*. 2002;360: 1347–1360.
11. DeSantis CE, Bray F, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Anderson BO, Jemal A. International Variation in Female Breast Cancer Incidence and Mortality Rates. *Cancer Epidemiology Biomarkers & Prevention*. 2015;24: OF1-OF12.
12. Baskar R, Lee KA, Yeo R, Yeoh K-W. Cancer and Radiation Therapy: Current Advances and Future Directions. *Int J Med Sci*. 2012;9: 193–199.
13. American Cancer Society I. The History of Cancer. In: American Cancer Society, Inc [Internet]. 2016. Available: <http://www.cancer.org/cancer/cancerbasics/thehistoryofcancer/>
14. Azmi AS, Wang Z, Philip PA, Mohammad RM, Sarkar FH. Proof of concept: network and systems biology approaches aid in the discovery of potent anticancer drug combinations. *Mol Cancer Ther*. 2010;9: 3137–3144.
15. Amundadottir LT, Thorvaldsson S, Gudbjartsson DF, Sulem P, Kristjansson K, Arnason S, *et al*. Cancer as a complex phenotype: pattern of cancer distribution within and beyond the nuclear family. *PLoS Med*. Public Library of Science; 2004;1: 229–236.
16. Reuter S, Gupta SC, Chaturvedi MM, Aggarwal BB. Oxidative stress, inflammation, and cancer: How are they linked? *Free Radic Biol Med*. 2010;49: 1603–1616.
17. Irigaray P, Newby JA, Clapp R, Hardell L, Howard V, Montagnier L, *et al*. Lifestyle-related factors and environmental agents causing cancer: An overview. *Biomed Pharmacother*. 2007;61: 640–658.
18. Feinberg AP. Epigenetics at the Epicenter of Modern Medicine. *JAMA*. 2008;299: 1345–1350.
19. Link A, Balaguer F, Goel A. Cancer chemoprevention by dietary polyphenols: Promising role for epigenetics. *Biochem Pharmacol*. Elsevier Inc.; 2010;80: 1771–1792.
20. Duru N, Gernapudi R, Eades G, Eckert R, Zhou Q. Epigenetic Regulation of miRNAs and Breast Cancer Stem Cells. *Curr Pharmacol Reports*. 2015; 1–9.
21. Breslow RA, Sorkin JD, Frey CM, Kessler LG. Americans' Knowledge of Cancer Risk and Survival. *Prev Med (Baltim)*. Academic Press; 1997;26: 170–177.
22. Stein CJ, Colditz GA. Modifiable risk factors for cancer. *Br J Cancer* . 2004;90: 299–

- 303.
23. Anand P, Kunnumakara AB, Sundaram C, Harikumar KB, Tharakan ST, Lai OS, *et al.* Cancer is a Preventable Disease that Requires Major Lifestyle Changes. *Pharm Res.* 2008;25: 2097–2116.
  24. Johnson IT. Micronutrients and cancer risk. *Proc Nutr Soc.* 2004;63: 587–595.
  25. World Health Organization, editor. *Cancer Control: Knowledge into Action. WHO Guide for Effective Programmes.* Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press; 2007.
  26. Key TJ, Allen NE, Spencer EA, Travis RC. Evidence for diet as a risk factor for cancer. *Lancet.* 2002;360: 861–868.
  27. Key T, Schatzkin a, Willet W, Allen N, Spencer E, Travis R. Diet, nutrition and the prevention of cancer. *Public Health Nutr.* 2004;7: 187–200.
  28. Divisi D, Di Tommaso S, Salvemini S, Garramone M, Crisci R. Diet and cancer. *Acta Biomed.* 2006;77: 118–123.
  29. Lundstrom K. Cancer and Diet. *J Pharm Nutr Sci.* 2012;2: 63–70.
  30. Steinmetz KA, Potter JD. Vegetables, fruit, and cancer prevention: A review. *J Am Diet Assoc.* 1996;96: 1027–1039.
  31. Bravo L. Polyphenols: chemistry, dietary sources, metabolism, and nutritional significance. *Nutr Rev.* 1998;56: 317–333.
  32. Ames BN. Micronutrients prevent cancer and delay aging. *Toxicol Lett.* 1998;102–103: 5–18.
  33. Hu FB. Plant-based foods and prevention of cardiovascular disease: an overview. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2003;78: 544–551.
  34. Riboli E, Norat T. Epidemiologic evidence of the protective effect of fruit and vegetables on cancer risk 1–4. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2003;78: 559–569.
  35. Surh Y-J. Cancer chemoprevention with dietary phytochemicals. *Nat Rev Cancer.* 2003;3: 768–780.
  36. Elmadfa I, editor. *Diet diversification and health promotion. Forum of nutrition.* Vienna: Karger (Basel ; New York) ; 2005.
  37. Russo GL. Ins and outs of dietary phytochemicals in cancer chemoprevention. *Biochemical Pharmacology.* 2007. pp. 533–544.
  38. Slavin JL, Lloyd B. Health Benefits of Fruits and Vegetables. *Adv Nutr An Int Rev J.*

- American Society for Nutrition; 2012;3: 506–516.
39. Hoareau L, Dasilva EJ. Medicinal plants: a re-emerging health aid. *Electron J Biotechnol.* 1999;2: 56–70.
  40. Okigbo RN, Mmeka EC. An Appraisal of Phytomedicine in Africa. *KMITL Sci Tech J.* 2006;6: 83–94.
  41. Gurib-Fakim A. Medicinal plants: Traditions of yesterday and drugs of tomorrow. *Mol Aspects Med.* 2006;27: 1–93.
  42. Tilburt JC, Kaptchuk TJ. Herbal medicine research and global health: an ethical analysis. *Bull World Health Organ.* 2008;86: 594–599.
  43. Freeman M, Motsei M. Planning health care in South Africa - is there a role for traditional healers? *Soc Sci Med.* 1992;32: 1183–1190.
  44. Pécoul B, Chirac P, Trouiller P, Pinel J, Kaddar M, Trouiller P, *et al.* Access to Essential Drugs in Poor Countries: A Lost Battle? *JAMA. American Medical Association;* 1999;281: 361–367.
  45. Reich MR. The Global Drug Gap. *Science (80- ).* 2000;287: 1979–1982.
  46. Vickers A, Zollman C, Zollman Background C. Herbal medicine. *Br Med J.* 1999;319: 1050–1053.
  47. Garodia P, Ichikawa H, Malani N, Sethi G, Aggarwal BB. From Ancient Medicine to Modern Medicine: Ayurvedic Concepts of Health and Their Role in Inflammation and Cancer. *J Soc Integr Oncol.* 2007;5: 1–15.
  48. Okigbo RN, Anuagasi CL, Amadi JE. Advances in selected medicinal and aromatic plants indigenous to Africa. *J Med Plants Res.* 2009;3: 86–95.
  49. Zhang X, editor. WHO Traditional Medicine Strategy 2002-2005 [Internet]. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2002. Available: [http://www.wpro.who.int/health\\_technology/book\\_who\\_traditional\\_medicine\\_strategy\\_2002\\_2005.pdf](http://www.wpro.who.int/health_technology/book_who_traditional_medicine_strategy_2002_2005.pdf)
  50. Peltzer K, Preez NF, Ramlagan S, Fomundam H, Bodecker G, Kasilo O, *et al.* Use of traditional complementary and alternative medicine for HIV patients in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *BMC Public Health. BioMed Central;* 2008;8: 1–14.
  51. Balunas MJ, Kinghorn DA. Drug discovery from medicinal plants. *Life Sci.* 2005;78: 431–441.
  52. Corson TW, Crews CM. Molecular Understanding and Modern Application of Traditional Medicines: Triumphs and Trials. *Cell.* 2007;130: 769–774.

53. Mans DRA. Anti-Cancer Drug Discovery and Development in Brazil: Targeted Plant Collection as a Rational Strategy to Acquire Candidate Anti-Cancer Compounds. *Oncologist*. 2000;5: 185–198.
54. Corson TW, Crews CM. Molecular Understanding and Modern Application of Traditional Medicines: Triumphs and Trials. *Cell*. 2007;130: 769–774.
55. Vane JR, Botting RM. The mechanism of action of aspirin. *Thromb Res*. 2003;110: 255–258.
56. Jachak SM, Saklani A. Challenges and opportunities in drug discovery from plants. *Curr Sci*. 2007;92: 1251–1257.
57. Gottesman MM. Mechanisms of cancer drug resistance. *Annu Rev Med*. 2002;53: 615–627.
58. Holohan C, Van Schaeybroeck S, Longley DB, Johnston PG. Cancer drug resistance: an evolving paradigm. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2013;13: 714–726.
59. Efferth T, Koch E. Complex interactions between phytochemicals. The multi-target therapeutic concept of phytotherapy. *Curr Drug Targets*. 2011;12: 122–132.
60. Manach C, Scalbert A, Morand C, Rémésy C, Jime L. Polyphenols: food sources and bioavailability 1,2. *Am Soc Clin Nutr*. 2004;79: 727–747.
61. Kennedy DO, Wightman EL. Herbal extracts and phytochemicals: plant secondary metabolites and the enhancement of human brain function. *Adv Nutr*. American Society for Nutrition; 2011;2: 32–50.
62. Gertsch J. Botanical drugs, synergy, and network pharmacology: Forth and back to intelligent mixtures. *Planta Med*. 2011;77: 1086–1098.
63. Li Y, Hsun T, Huang -Wei, Yamahara J. *Salacia* root, a unique Ayurvedic medicine , meets multiple targets in diabetes and obesity. *Life Sci*. 2008;82: 1045–1049.
64. Deokate UA, Khadabadi SS. Phytopharmacological aspects of *Salacia chinensis*. *J Pharmacogn Phyther*. 2012;4: 1–5.
65. Musini A, Rao JP, Giri A. Phytochemicals of *Salacia oblonga* responsible for free radical scavenging and antiproliferative activity against breast cancer cell lines (MDA-MB-231). *Physiol Mol Biol Plants*. 2015;21: 583–590.
66. Won Lee K, Bode AM, Dong Z. Molecular targets of phytochemicals for cancer prevention. *Nat Rev Cancer*. 2011;11: 211–218.
67. HemaIswarya S, Doble M. Potential synergism of natural products in the treatment of cancer. *Phytother Res*. 2006;20: 239–249.



68. Wagner H. Synergy research: Approaching a new generation of phytopharmaceuticals. *Fitoterapia*. 2011;82: 34–37.
69. McPherson K, Steel CM, Dixon JM. ABC of breast diseases. Breast cancer-epidemiology, risk factors and genetics. *Br Med J*. 1994;309: 1003–1006.
70. Vorobiof BDA, Sitas F, Vorobiof G. Breast Cancer Incidence in South Africa. 2001;19: 125–127.
71. DeSantis C, Ma J, Bryan L, Jemal A. Breast Cancer Statistics , 2013. *Cancer J Clin*. 2013;64: 52–62.
72. Ellisen LW, Haber DA. Hereditary breast cancer. *Annu Rev Med*. 1998;49: 425–436.
73. Key TJ, Verkasalo PK, Banks E. Epidemiology of breast cancer. *Lancet Oncol*. 2001;2: 133–140.
74. Bogdanova N, Helbig S, Dörk T. Hereditary breast cancer: ever more pieces to the polygenic puzzle. *Hered Cancer Clin Pract*. *BioMed Central*; 2013;11: 1–16.
75. Majeed W, Aslam B, Javed I, Khaliq T, Muhammad F, Ali A, *et al*. Breast cancer: major risk factors and recent developments in treatment. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev*. 2014;15: 3353–3358.
76. Laden F, Hunter DJ. Environmental Risk Factors and Female Breast Cancer. *Annu Rev Public Heal*. 1998;19: 101–123.
77. Lippman M, Monaco ME, Bolan G. Effects of Estrone, Estradiol, and Estriol on Hormone responsive Human Breast Cancer in Long-Term Tissue Culture. *Cancer Res*. 1977;37: 1901–1907.
78. Lignieres B de. Hormone replacement therapy: clinical benefits and side-effects. *Maturitas*. 1996;23: S31–S36.
79. Nilsson S, Gustafsson J-Å. Biological Role of Estrogen and Estrogen Receptors. *Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol*. 2002;37: 1–28.
80. Bhavnani BR. Estrogens and menopause: pharmacology of conjugated equine estrogens and their potential role in the prevention of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2003;85: 473–482.
81. Simpkins JW, Yang S-H, Wen Y, Singh M. Estrogens, progestins, menopause and neurodegeneration: basic and clinical studies. *C Cell Mol Life Sci*. 2005;6205: 271–280.
82. Tang MX, Jacobs D, Stern Y, Marder K, Schofield P, Garland B, *et al*. Effect of oestrogen during menopause on risk and age at onset of Alzheimer's disease. *Lancet*. 1996;348: 429–432.

83. Kanis JA. Estrogens, the menopause, and osteoporosis. *Bone*. Elsevier; 1996;19: 185S–190S.
84. Björn I, Bäckström T. Drug related negative side-effects is a common reason for poor compliance in hormone replacement therapy. *Maturitas*. 1999;32: 77–86.
85. Mayeux R, Tang M-X. Oestrogen and Alzheimer's disease. *The Lancet*. 1996. pp. 1029–1030.
86. Wroblewski Lissin L, Cooke JP. Phytoestrogens and cardiovascular health. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2000;35: 1403–1410.
87. Lagari VS, Levis S. Phytoestrogens for menopausal bone loss and climacteric symptoms. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;139: 294–301.
88. Poluzzi E, Piccinni C, Raschi E, Rampa A, Recanatini M, De Ponti F. Phytoestrogens in postmenopause: the state of the art from a chemical, pharmacological and regulatory perspective. *Curr Med Chem*. 2014;21: 417–436.
89. Sirotkin A V, Harrath AH. Phytoestrogens and their effects. *Eur J Pharmacol*. Elsevier; 2014;741: 230–236.
90. Bedell S, Nachtigall M, Naftolin F. The pros and cons of plant estrogens for menopause. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. Elsevier Ltd; 2014;139: 225–236.
91. Calixto JB. Efficacy, safety, quality control, marketing and regulatory guidelines for herbal medicines (phytotherapeutic agents). *Brazilian J Med Biol Res*. 2000;33: 179–189.
92. McKay DL, Blumberg JB. A Review of the Bioactivity of South African Herbal Teas: Rooibos (*Aspalathus linearis*) and Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*). *Phyther Res*. 2007;21: 1–16.
93. Joubert E, Gelderblom WCA, Louw A, de Beer D. South African herbal teas: *Aspalathus linearis*, *Cyclopia* spp. and *Athrixia phylicoides*—A review. *J Ethnopharmacol*. 2008;119: 376–412.
94. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M. Honeybush (*Cyclopia* sp.) - A rich source of compounds with high antimutagenic properties. *Fitoterapia*. Elsevier B.V.; 2009;80: 3–11.
95. Louw A, Joubert E, Visser K. Phytoestrogenic potential of *Cyclopia* extracts and polyphenols. *Planta Med*. 2013;79: 580–590.
96. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Evaluation of the phytoestrogenic activity of *Cyclopia genistoides* (Honeybush) methanol extracts and relevant polyphenols. *J Agric Food Chem*. 2007;55: 4371–4381.

97. Muller CJF, Joubert E, Gabuza K, Beer D De, Fey SJ, Louw J. Assessment of the Antidiabetic Potential of an Aqueous Extract of Honeybush (*Cyclopia intermedia*) in Streptozotocin and Obese Insulin Resistant Wistar Rats. In: Iraj Rasooli, editor. *Phytochemicals - Bioactivities and Impact on Health*. InTech; 2010. pp. 313–333.
98. de Beer D, Schulze A, Joubert E, de Villiers A, Malherbe C, Stander M. Food Ingredient Extracts of *Cyclopia subternata* (Honeybush): Variation in Phenolic Composition and Antioxidant Capacity. *Molecules*. 2012;17: 14602–14624.
99. Kokotkiewicz A, Luczkiewicz M, Pawlowska J, Luczkiewicz P, Sowinski P, Witkowski J, *et al.* Isolation of xanthone and benzophenone derivatives from *Cyclopia genistoides* (L.) Vent. (honeybush) and their pro-apoptotic activity on synoviocytes from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Fitoterapia*. Elsevier B.V.; 2013;90: 199–208.
100. Visser K, Zierau O, Macejová D, Goerl F, Muders M, Baretton GB, *et al.* The phytoestrogenic *Cyclopia* extract, SM6Met, increases median tumor free survival and reduces tumor mass and volume in chemically induced rat mammary gland carcinogenesis. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol*. 2016; 1–7.
101. Visser K, Mortimer M, Louw A. *Cyclopia* extracts act as ER $\alpha$  antagonists and ER $\beta$  agonists, *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *PLoS One*. 2013;8: 1–22.
102. Visser JAK. Phytoestrogenic Extracts of *Cyclopia* Modulate Molecular Targets Involved in the Prevention and Treatment of Breast Cancer. PhD dissertation, Stellenbosch University, Western Cape, South Africa. 2013.
103. Lattrich C, Stegerer A, Häring J, Schüller S, Ortmann O, Treeck O. Estrogen receptor  $\beta$  agonists affect growth and gene expression of human breast cancer cell lines. *Steroids*. Elsevier Inc.; 2013;78: 195–202.
104. Sareddy GR, Vadlamudi RK. Cancer therapy using natural ligands that target estrogen receptor beta. *Chin J Nat Med*. China Pharmaceutical University; 2015;13: 801–807.
105. Leitman DC, Paruthiyil S, Vivar OI, Saunier EF, Herber CB, Cohen I, *et al.* Regulation of specific target genes and biological responses by estrogen receptor subtype agonists. *Curr Opin Pharmacol*. Elsevier Ltd; 2010;10: 629–636.
106. Warner M, Gustafsson J-Å. The role of estrogen receptor beta (ERbeta) in malignant diseases - a new potential target for antiproliferative drugs in prevention and treatment of cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. 2010;396: 63–66.
107. Mortimer M, Visser K, de Beer D, Joubert E, Louw A. Divide and conquer may not be the optimal approach to retain the desirable estrogenic attributes of the *Cyclopia* nutraceutical extract, SM6Met. *PLoS One*. 2015;10: 1–22.
108. Verhoog NJD, Joubert E, Louw A. Screening of four *Cyclopia* (honeybush) species for putative phyto-oestrogenic activity by oestrogen receptor binding assays. *S Afr J Sci*. 2007; 13–21.

109. Collins-Burow BM, Burow ME, Duong BN, McLachlan J. Estrogenic and Antiestrogenic Activities of Flavonoid Phytochemicals Through Estrogen Receptor Binding-Dependent and -Independent Mechanisms. *Nutr Cancer*. 2000;38: 229–244.
110. Lin Y, Shi R, Wang X, Shen H-M. Luteolin, a flavonoid with potentials for cancer prevention and therapy. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets*. 2008;8: 634–646.
111. Kitalong C, Ali M, El-Dine R. Phenolics from *Phaleria nisidai* with Estrogenic Activity. *Rec Nat Prod*. 2012;3: 296–300.
112. Wilkinson AS, Taing M-W, Pierson JT, Lin C-N, Dietzgen RG, Shaw PN, *et al*. Estrogen modulation properties of mangiferin and quercetin and the mangiferin metabolite norathyriol. *Food Funct*. Royal Society of Chemistry; 2015;6: 1847–1854.
113. Friedman M, Jürgens HS. Effect of pH on the stability of plant phenolic compounds. *J Agric Food Chem*. 2000;48: 2101–2110.
114. Li HH, Huang J, Yang B, Xiang T, Yin X, Peng W, *et al*. Mangiferin exerts antitumor activity in breast cancer cells by regulating matrix metalloproteinases, epithelial to mesenchymal transition, and  $\beta$ -catenin signaling pathway. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 2013;272: 180–90.
115. Mendoza-Sarmiento G, Rojas-Herandez A, Galano A, Gutiérrez A. A combined experimental–theoretical study of the acid–base behavior of mangiferin: implications for its antioxidant activity. *R Soc Chem*. 2016;6: 51171–51182.
116. Gilbert B, Alves LF. Synergy in Plant Medicines. *Curr Med Chem*. 2003;10: 13–20.
117. Liu RH. Health benefits of fruit and vegetables are from additive and synergistic combinations of phytochemicals. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2003;78: 3–6.
118. Liu RH. Potential synergy of phytochemicals in cancer prevention: mechanism of action. *J Nutr*. 2004;134: 3479S–3485S.
119. Rasoanaivo P, Wright CW, Willcox ML, Gilbert B. Whole plant extracts versus single compounds for the treatment of malaria: synergy and positive interactions. *Malar J*. BioMed Central; 2011;10: 1–12.
120. Chakraborty AK, Dustin ML, Shaw AS. *In silico* models for cellular and molecular immunology: Successes, promises and challenges. *Nat Immunol*. 2003;4: 933–936.
121. Wishart DS. DrugBank: a comprehensive resource for *in silico* drug discovery and exploration. *Nucleic Acids Res*. 2006;34: D668–D672.
122. Li X, Qin G, Yang Q, Chen L, Xie L. Biomolecular Network-Based Synergistic Drug Combination Discovery. *Biomed Res Int*. 2016;2016: 1–11.
123. Di Veroli GY, Fornari C, Wang D, Mollard S, Bramhall JL, Richards FM, *et al*.

Combenefit: An interactive platform for the analysis and visualization of drug combinations. *Bioinformatics*. 2016;32: 2866–2868.

124. Moquin B, Blackman MR, Mitty E, Flores S, Gooneratne NS, Barnes PM, *et al.* Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM). *Geriatr Nurs*. Elsevier; 2008;30: 196–203.